



# Housing Act 2004

## 2004 CHAPTER 34

### PART 1

#### HOUSING CONDITIONS

#### CHAPTER 1

##### ENFORCEMENT OF HOUSING STANDARDS: GENERAL

##### *New system for assessing housing conditions*

### **1 New system for assessing housing conditions and enforcing housing standards**

- (1) This Part provides—
  - (a) for a new system of assessing the condition of residential premises, and
  - (b) for that system to be used in the enforcement of housing standards in relation to such premises.
- (2) The new system—
  - (a) operates by reference to the existence of category 1 or category 2 hazards on residential premises (see section 2), and
  - (b) replaces the existing system based on the test of fitness for human habitation contained in section 604 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68).
- (3) The kinds of enforcement action which are to involve the use of the new system are—
  - (a) the new kinds of enforcement action contained in Chapter 2 (improvement notices, prohibition orders and hazard awareness notices),
  - (b) the new emergency measures contained in Chapter 3 (emergency remedial action and emergency prohibition orders), and
  - (c) the existing kinds of enforcement action dealt with in Chapter 4 (demolition orders and slum clearance declarations).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) In this Part “residential premises” means—
- (a) a dwelling;
  - (b) an HMO;
  - (c) unoccupied HMO accommodation;
  - (d) any common parts of a building containing one or more flats.
- (5) In this Part—
- “building containing one or more flats” does not include an HMO;
- “common parts”, in relation to a building containing one or more flats, includes—
- (a) the structure and exterior of the building, and
  - (b) common facilities provided (whether or not in the building) for persons who include the occupiers of one or more of the flats;
- “dwelling” means a building or part of a building occupied or intended to be occupied as a separate dwelling;
- “external common parts”, in relation to a building containing one or more flats, means common parts of the building which are outside it;
- “flat” means a separate set of premises (whether or not on the same floor)—
- (a) which forms part of a building,
  - (b) which is constructed or adapted for use for the purposes of a dwelling, and
  - (c) either the whole or a material part of which lies above or below some other part of the building;
- “HMO” means a house in multiple occupation as defined by sections 254 to 259, as they have effect for the purposes of this Part (that is, without the exclusions contained in Schedule 14);
- “unoccupied HMO accommodation” means a building or part of a building constructed or adapted for use as a house in multiple occupation but for the time being either unoccupied or only occupied by persons who form a single household.
- (6) In this Part any reference to a dwelling, an HMO or a building containing one or more flats includes (where the context permits) any yard, garden, outhouses and appurtenances belonging to, or usually enjoyed with, the dwelling, HMO or building (or any part of it).
- (7) The following indicates how this Part applies to flats—
- (a) references to a dwelling or an HMO include a dwelling or HMO which is a flat (as defined by subsection (5)); and
  - (b) subsection (6) applies in relation to such a dwelling or HMO as it applies in relation to other dwellings or HMOs (but it is not to be taken as referring to any common parts of the building containing the flat).
- (8) This Part applies to unoccupied HMO accommodation as it applies to an HMO, and references to an HMO in subsections (6) and (7) and in the following provisions of this Part are to be read accordingly.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Commencement Information

- II** S. 1 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 1 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 1 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 1 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 2 Meaning of “category 1 hazard” and “category 2 hazard”

(1) In this Act—

“category 1 hazard” means a hazard of a prescribed description which falls within a prescribed band as a result of achieving, under a prescribed method for calculating the seriousness of hazards of that description, a numerical score of or above a prescribed amount;

“category 2 hazard” means a hazard of a prescribed description which falls within a prescribed band as a result of achieving, under a prescribed method for calculating the seriousness of hazards of that description, a numerical score below the minimum amount prescribed for a category 1 hazard of that description; and

“hazard” means any risk of harm to the health or safety of an actual or potential occupier of a dwelling or HMO which arises from a deficiency in the dwelling or HMO or in any building or land in the vicinity (whether the deficiency arises as a result of the construction of any building, an absence of maintenance or repair, or otherwise).

(2) In subsection (1)—

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority (see section 261(1)); and

“prescribed band” means a band so prescribed for a category 1 hazard or a category 2 hazard, as the case may be.

(3) Regulations under this section may, in particular, prescribe a method for calculating the seriousness of hazards which takes into account both the likelihood of the harm occurring and the severity of the harm if it were to occur.

(4) In this section—

“building” includes part of a building;

“harm” includes temporary harm.

(5) In this Act “health” includes mental health.

### *Procedure for assessing housing conditions*

## 3 Local housing authorities to review housing conditions in their districts

(1) A local housing authority must keep the housing conditions in their area under review with a view to identifying any action that may need to be taken by them under any of the provisions mentioned in subsection (2).

(2) The provisions are—

- (a) the following provisions of this Act—

(i) this Part,

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) Part 2 (licensing of HMOs),
  - (iii) Part 3 (selective licensing of other houses), and
  - (iv) Chapters 1 and 2 of Part 4 (management orders);
  - (b) Part 9 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (demolition orders and slum clearance);
  - (c) Part 7 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c. 42) (renewal areas); and
  - (d) article 3 of the Regulatory Reform (Housing Assistance) (England and Wales) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/1860).
- (3) For the purpose of carrying out their duty under subsection (1) a local housing authority and their officers must—
- (a) comply with any directions that may be given by the appropriate national authority, and
  - (b) keep such records, and supply the appropriate national authority with such information, as that authority may specify.

#### Commencement Information

- I2** [S. 3](#) wholly in force at 16.6.2006; [s. 3](#) not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 270\(4\)\(5\)](#); [s. 3](#) in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); [s. 3](#) in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### 4 Inspections by local housing authorities to see whether category 1 or 2 hazards exist

- (1) If a local housing authority consider—
- (a) as a result of any matters of which they have become aware in carrying out their duty under section 3, or
  - (b) for any other reason,
- that it would be appropriate for any residential premises in their district to be inspected with a view to determining whether any category 1 or 2 hazard exists on those premises, the authority must arrange for such an inspection to be carried out.
- (2) If an official complaint about the condition of any residential premises in the district of a local housing authority is made to the proper officer of the authority, and the circumstances complained of indicate—
- (a) that any category 1 or category 2 hazard may exist on those premises, or
  - (b) that an area in the district should be dealt with as a clearance area,
- the proper officer must inspect the premises or area.
- (3) In this section “an official complaint” means a complaint in writing made by—
- (a) a justice of the peace having jurisdiction in any part of the district, or
  - (b) the parish or community council for a parish or community within the district.
- (4) An inspection of any premises under subsection (1) or (2)—
- (a) is to be carried out in accordance with regulations made by the appropriate national authority; and
  - (b) is to extend to so much of the premises as the local housing authority or proper officer (as the case may be) consider appropriate in the circumstances having regard to any applicable provisions of the regulations.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) Regulations under subsection (4) may in particular make provision about—
  - (a) the manner in which, and the extent to which, premises are to be inspected under subsection (1) or (2), and
  - (b) the manner in which the assessment of hazards is to be carried out.
- (6) Where an inspection under subsection (2) has been carried out and the proper officer of a local housing authority is of the opinion—
  - (a) that a category 1 or 2 hazard exists on any residential premises in the authority's district, or
  - (b) that an area in their district should be dealt with as a clearance area,the officer must, without delay, make a report in writing to the authority which sets out his opinion together with the facts of the case.
- (7) The authority must consider any report made to them under subsection (6) as soon as possible.

#### Commencement Information

**I3** S. 4 wholly in force at 6.4.2006; s. 4 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 4 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by S.I. 2005/3237, art. 2(a); s. 4 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.)

### *Enforcement of housing standards*

## **5 Category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action**

- (1) If a local housing authority consider that a category 1 hazard exists on any residential premises, they must take the appropriate enforcement action in relation to the hazard.
- (2) In subsection (1) “the appropriate enforcement action” means whichever of the following courses of action is indicated by subsection (3) or (4)—
  - (a) serving an improvement notice under section 11;
  - (b) making a prohibition order under section 20;
  - (c) serving a hazard awareness notice under section 28;
  - (d) taking emergency remedial action under section 40;
  - (e) making an emergency prohibition order under section 43;
  - (f) making a demolition order under subsection (1) or (2) of section 265 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68);
  - (g) declaring the area in which the premises concerned are situated to be a clearance area by virtue of section 289(2) of that Act.
- (3) If only one course of action within subsection (2) is available to the authority in relation to the hazard, they must take that course of action.
- (4) If two or more courses of action within subsection (2) are available to the authority in relation to the hazard, they must take the course of action which they consider to be the most appropriate of those available to them.
- (5) The taking by the authority of a course of action within subsection (2) does not prevent subsection (1) from requiring them to take in relation to the same hazard—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) either the same course of action again or another such course of action, if they consider that the action taken by them so far has not proved satisfactory, or
  - (b) another such course of action, where the first course of action is that mentioned in subsection (2)(g) and their eventual decision under section 289(2F) of the Housing Act 1985 means that the premises concerned are not to be included in a clearance area.
- (6) To determine whether a course of action mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (g) of subsection (2) is “available” to the authority in relation to the hazard, see the provision mentioned in that paragraph.
- (7) Section 6 applies for the purposes of this section.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** S. 5 modified by [Housing Act 1985 \(c. 68\)](#), s. 265(1)(2) (as substituted (6.4.2006 (E.) and 16.6.2006 (W.)) by [Housing Act 2004 \(c. 34\)](#), ss. 46, 270(4)(5)(a)); S.I. 2006/1060, [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); S.I. 2006/1535, [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)
- C2** S. 5 modified by [Housing Act 1985 \(c. 68\)](#), s. 289(2) (as substituted (6.4.2006 (E.) and 16.6.2006 (W.)) by [Housing Act 2004 \(c. 34\)](#), ss. 47, 270(4)(5)(a)); S.I. 2006/1060, [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); S.I. 2006/1535, [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)
- C3** S. 5 modified by [Housing Act 1985 \(c. 68\)](#), s. 300(1)(a)(2)(a) (as substituted (6.4.2006 (E.) and 16.6.2006 (W.)) by [Housing Act 2004 \(c. 34\)](#), ss. 265(1), 270(4)(5)(f), [Sch. 15 para. 20](#)); S.I. 2006/1060, [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#) (with Sch.); S.I. 2006/1535, [art. 2\(b\)](#) (with Sch.)

#### Commencement Information

- I4** S. 5 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 5 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 5 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); s. 5 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

## 6 Category 1 hazards: how duty under section 5 operates in certain cases

- (1) This section explains the effect of provisions contained in subsection (2) of section 5.
- (2) In the case of paragraph (b) or (f) of that subsection, the reference to making an order such as is mentioned in that paragraph is to be read as a reference to making instead a determination under section 300(1) or (2) of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (power to purchase for temporary housing use) in a case where the authority consider the latter course of action to be the better alternative in the circumstances.
- (3) In the case of paragraph (d) of that subsection, the authority may regard the taking of emergency remedial action under section 40 followed by the service of an improvement notice under section 11 as a single course of action.
- (4) In the case of paragraph (e) of that subsection, the authority may regard the making of an emergency prohibition order under section 43 followed by the service of a prohibition order under section 20 as a single course of action.
- (5) In the case of paragraph (g) of that subsection—
- (a) any duty to take the course of action mentioned in that paragraph is subject to the operation of subsections (2B) to (4) and (5B) of section 289 of the Housing Act 1985 (procedural and other restrictions relating to slum clearance declarations); and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) that paragraph does not apply in a case where the authority have already declared the area in which the premises concerned are situated to be a clearance area in accordance with section 289, but the premises have been excluded by virtue of section 289(2F)(b).

#### Commencement Information

- I5** S. 6 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 6 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 6 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 6 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 7 Category 2 hazards: powers to take enforcement action

- (1) The provisions mentioned in subsection (2) confer power on a local housing authority to take particular kinds of enforcement action in cases where they consider that a category 2 hazard exists on residential premises.
- (2) The provisions are—
- (a) section 12 (power to serve an improvement notice),
  - (b) section 21 (power to make a prohibition order),
  - (c) section 29 (power to serve a hazard awareness notice),
  - (d) section 265(3) and (4) of the Housing Act 1985 (power to make a demolition order), and
  - (e) section 289(2ZB) of that Act (power to make a slum clearance declaration).
- (3) The taking by the authority of one of those kinds of enforcement action in relation to a particular category 2 hazard does not prevent them from taking either—
- (a) the same kind of action again, or
  - (b) a different kind of enforcement action,
- in relation to the hazard, where they consider that the action taken by them so far has not proved satisfactory.

#### Commencement Information

- I6** S. 7 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 7 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 7 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 7 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 8 Reasons for decision to take enforcement action

- (1) This section applies where a local housing authority decide to take one of the kinds of enforcement action mentioned in section 5(2) or 7(2) (“the relevant action”).
- (2) The authority must prepare a statement of the reasons for their decision to take the relevant action.
- (3) Those reasons must include the reasons why the authority decided to take the relevant action rather than any other kind (or kinds) of enforcement action available to them under the provisions mentioned in section 5(2) or 7(2).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) A copy of the statement prepared under subsection (2) must accompany every notice, copy of a notice, or copy of an order which is served in accordance with—
- (a) Part 1 of Schedule 1 to this Act (service of improvement notices etc.),
  - (b) Part 1 of Schedule 2 to this Act (service of copies of prohibition orders etc.), or
  - (c) section 268 of the Housing Act 1985 (service of copies of demolition orders),
- in or in connection with the taking of the relevant action.
- (5) In subsection (4)—
- (a) the reference to Part 1 of Schedule 1 to this Act includes a reference to that Part as applied by section 28(7) or 29(7) (hazard awareness notices) or to section 40(7) (emergency remedial action); and
  - (b) the reference to Part 1 of Schedule 2 to this Act includes a reference to that Part as applied by section 43(4) (emergency prohibition orders).
- (6) If the relevant action consists of declaring an area to be a clearance area, the statement prepared under subsection (2) must be published—
- (a) as soon as possible after the relevant resolution is passed under section 289 of the Housing Act 1985, and
  - (b) in such manner as the authority consider appropriate.

#### Commencement Information

**I7** S. 8 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 8 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 8 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 8 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 9 Guidance about inspections and enforcement action

- (1) The appropriate national authority may give guidance to local housing authorities about exercising—
- (a) their functions under this Chapter in relation to the inspection of premises and the assessment of hazards,
  - (b) their functions under Chapter 2 of this Part in relation to improvement notices, prohibition orders or hazard awareness notices,
  - (c) their functions under Chapter 3 in relation to emergency remedial action and emergency prohibition orders, or
  - (d) their functions under Part 9 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) in relation to demolition orders and slum clearance.
- (2) A local housing authority must have regard to any guidance for the time being given under this section.
- (3) The appropriate national authority may give different guidance for different cases or descriptions of case or different purposes (including different guidance to different descriptions of local housing authority or to local housing authorities in different areas).
- (4) Before giving guidance under this section, or revising guidance already given, the Secretary of State must lay a draft of the proposed guidance or alterations before each House of Parliament.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) The Secretary of State must not give or revise the guidance before the end of the period of 40 days beginning with the day on which the draft is laid before each House of Parliament (or, if copies are laid before each House of Parliament on different days, the later of those days).
- (6) The Secretary of State must not proceed with the proposed guidance or alterations if, within the period of 40 days mentioned in subsection (5), either House resolves that the guidance or alterations be withdrawn.
- (7) Subsection (6) is without prejudice to the possibility of laying a further draft of the guidance or alterations before each House of Parliament.
- (8) In calculating the period of 40 days mentioned in subsection (5), no account is to be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than four days.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C4** S. 9 applied by [Housing Act 1985 \(c. 68\)](#), s. 269A (as inserted (6.4.2006 (E.) and 16.6.2006 (W.)) by [Housing Act 2004 \(c. 34\)](#), ss. 265(1), 270(4)(5)(f), [Sch. 15 para. 15](#)); [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 10 Consultation with fire and rescue authorities in certain cases

- (1) This section applies where a local housing authority—
  - (a) are satisfied that a prescribed fire hazard exists in an HMO or in any common parts of a building containing one or more flats, and
  - (b) intend to take in relation to the hazard one of the kinds of enforcement action mentioned in section 5(2) or section 7(2).
- (2) Before taking the enforcement action in question, the authority must consult the fire and rescue authority for the area in which the HMO or building is situated.
- (3) In the case of any proposed emergency measures, the authority’s duty under subsection (2) is a duty to consult that fire and rescue authority so far as it is practicable to do so before taking those measures.
- (4) In this section—
  - “emergency measures” means emergency remedial action under section 40 or an emergency prohibition order under section 43;
  - “fire and rescue authority” means a fire and rescue authority under the Fire and Rescue Services Act 2004 (c. 21);
  - “prescribed fire hazard” means a category 1 or 2 hazard which is prescribed as a fire hazard for the purposes of this section by regulations under section 2.

**Commencement Information**

- I8** S. 10 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 10 not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 270\(4\)\(5\)](#); s. 10 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 10 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## CHAPTER 2

### IMPROVEMENT NOTICES, PROHIBITION ORDERS AND HAZARD AWARENESS NOTICES

#### *Improvement notices*

#### **11 Improvement notices relating to category 1 hazards: duty of authority to serve notice**

- (1) If—
- (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 1 hazard exists on any residential premises, and
  - (b) no management order is in force in relation to the premises under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4,

serving an improvement notice under this section in respect of the hazard is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard for the purposes of section 5 (category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action).

- (2) An improvement notice under this section is a notice requiring the person on whom it is served to take such remedial action in respect of the hazard concerned as is specified in the notice in accordance with subsections (3) to (5) and section 13.
- (3) The notice may require remedial action to be taken in relation to the following premises—
  - (a) if the residential premises on which the hazard exists are a dwelling or HMO which is not a flat, it may require such action to be taken in relation to the dwelling or HMO;
  - (b) if those premises are one or more flats, it may require such action to be taken in relation to the building containing the flat or flats (or any part of the building) or any external common parts;
  - (c) if those premises are the common parts of a building containing one or more flats, it may require such action to be taken in relation to the building (or any part of the building) or any external common parts.

Paragraphs (b) and (c) are subject to subsection (4).

- (4) The notice may not, by virtue of subsection (3)(b) or (c), require any remedial action to be taken in relation to any part of the building or its external common parts that is not included in any residential premises on which the hazard exists, unless the authority are satisfied—
  - (a) that the deficiency from which the hazard arises is situated there, and
  - (b) that it is necessary for the action to be so taken in order to protect the health or safety of any actual or potential occupiers of one or more of the flats.
- (5) The remedial action required to be taken by the notice —
  - (a) must, as a minimum, be such as to ensure that the hazard ceases to be a category 1 hazard; but
  - (b) may extend beyond such action.
- (6) An improvement notice under this section may relate to more than one category 1 hazard on the same premises or in the same building containing one or more flats.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) The operation of an improvement notice under this section may be suspended in accordance with section 14.
- (8) In this Part “remedial action”, in relation to a hazard, means action (whether in the form of carrying out works or otherwise) which, in the opinion of the local housing authority, will remove or reduce the hazard.

#### Commencement Information

- I9** S. 11 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 11 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 11 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 11 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 12 Improvement notices relating to category 2 hazards: power of authority to serve notice

- (1) If—
- the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 2 hazard exists on any residential premises, and
  - no management order is in force in relation to the premises under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4,
- the authority may serve an improvement notice under this section in respect of the hazard.
- (2) An improvement notice under this section is a notice requiring the person on whom it is served to take such remedial action in respect of the hazard concerned as is specified in the notice in accordance with subsection (3) and section 13.
- (3) Subsections (3) and (4) of section 11 apply to an improvement notice under this section as they apply to one under that section.
- (4) An improvement notice under this section may relate to more than one category 2 hazard on the same premises or in the same building containing one or more flats.
- (5) An improvement notice under this section may be combined in one document with a notice under section 11 where they require remedial action to be taken in relation to the same premises.
- (6) The operation of an improvement notice under this section may be suspended in accordance with section 14.

#### Commencement Information

- I10** S. 12 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 12 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 12 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 12 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 13 Contents of improvement notices

- (1) An improvement notice under section 11 or 12 must comply with the following provisions of this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The notice must specify, in relation to the hazard (or each of the hazards) to which it relates—
  - (a) whether the notice is served under section 11 or 12,
  - (b) the nature of the hazard and the residential premises on which it exists,
  - (c) the deficiency giving rise to the hazard,
  - (d) the premises in relation to which remedial action is to be taken in respect of the hazard and the nature of that remedial action,
  - (e) the date when the remedial action is to be started (see subsection (3)), and
  - (f) the period within which the remedial action is to be completed or the periods within which each part of it is to be completed.
- (3) The notice may not require any remedial action to be started earlier than the 28th day after that on which the notice is served.
- (4) The notice must contain information about—
  - (a) the right of appeal against the decision under Part 3 of Schedule 1, and
  - (b) the period within which an appeal may be made.
- (5) In this Part of this Act “specified premises”, in relation to an improvement notice, means premises specified in the notice, in accordance with subsection (2)(d), as premises in relation to which remedial action is to be taken in respect of the hazard.

#### Commencement Information

**III** S. 13 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 13 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 13 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 13 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 14 Suspension of improvement notices

- (1) An improvement notice may provide for the operation of the notice to be suspended until a time, or the occurrence of an event, specified in the notice.
- (2) The time so specified may, in particular, be the time when a person of a particular description begins, or ceases, to occupy any premises.
- (3) The event so specified may, in particular, be a notified breach of an undertaking accepted by the local housing authority for the purposes of this section from the person on whom the notice is served.
- (4) In subsection (3) a “notified breach”, in relation to such an undertaking, means an act or omission by the person on whom the notice is served—
  - (a) which the local housing authority consider to be a breach of the undertaking, and
  - (b) which is notified to that person in accordance with the terms of the undertaking.
- (5) If an improvement notice does provide for the operation of the notice to be suspended under this section—
  - (a) any periods specified in the notice under section 13 are to be fixed by reference to the day when the suspension ends, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in subsection (3) of that section the reference to the 28th day after that on which the notice is served is to be read as referring to the 21st day after that on which the suspension ends.

#### Commencement Information

**I12** S. 14 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 14 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 14 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 14 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 15 Operation of improvement notices

- (1) This section deals with the time when an improvement notice becomes operative.
- (2) The general rule is that an improvement notice becomes operative at the end of the period of 21 days beginning with the day on which it is served under Part 1 of Schedule 1 (which is the period for appealing against the notice under Part 3 of that Schedule).
- (3) The general rule is subject to subsection (4) (suspended notices) and subsection (5) (appeals).
- (4) If the notice is suspended under section 14, the notice becomes operative at the time when the suspension ends.  
This is subject to subsection (5).
- (5) If an appeal against the notice is made under Part 3 of Schedule 1, the notice does not become operative until such time (if any) as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 19 of that Schedule (time when notice is confirmed on appeal, period for further appeal expires or suspension ends).
- (6) If no appeal against an improvement notice is made under that Part of that Schedule within the period for appealing against it, the notice is final and conclusive as to matters which could have been raised on an appeal.

#### Commencement Information

**I13** S. 15 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 15 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 15 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 15 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 16 Revocation and variation of improvement notices

- (1) The local housing authority must revoke an improvement notice if they are satisfied that the requirements of the notice have been complied with.
- (2) The local housing authority may revoke an improvement notice if—
  - (a) in the case of a notice served under section 11, they consider that there are any special circumstances making it appropriate to revoke the notice; or
  - (b) in the case of a notice served under section 12, they consider that it is appropriate to revoke the notice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Where an improvement notice relates to a number of hazards—
  - (a) subsection (1) is to be read as applying separately in relation to each of those hazards, and
  - (b) if, as a result, the authority are required to revoke only part of the notice, they may vary the remainder as they consider appropriate.
- (4) The local housing authority may vary an improvement notice—
  - (a) with the agreement of the person on whom the notice was served, or
  - (b) in the case of a notice whose operation is suspended, so as to alter the time or events by reference to which the suspension is to come to an end.
- (5) A revocation under this section comes into force at the time when it is made.
- (6) If it is made with the agreement of the person on whom the improvement notice was served, a variation under this section comes into force at the time when it is made.
- (7) Otherwise a variation under this section does not come into force until such time (if any) as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 20 of Schedule 1 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).
- (8) The power to revoke or vary an improvement notice under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
  - (a) on an application made by the person on whom the improvement notice was served, or
  - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.

#### Commencement Information

**I14** S. 16 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 16 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 16 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 16 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 17 Review of suspended improvement notices

- (1) The local housing authority may at any time review an improvement notice whose operation is suspended.
- (2) The local housing authority must review an improvement notice whose operation is suspended not later than one year after the date of service of the notice and at subsequent intervals of not more than one year.
- (3) Copies of the authority’s decision on a review under this section must be served—
  - (a) on the person on whom the improvement notice was served, and
  - (b) on every other person on whom a copy of the notice was required to be served.

#### Commencement Information

**I15** S. 17 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 17 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 17 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 17 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 18 Service of improvement notices etc. and related appeals

Schedule 1 (which deals with the service of improvement notices, and notices relating to their revocation or variation, and with related appeals) has effect.

### Commencement Information

**I16** S. 18 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 18 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 18 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 18 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 19 Change in person liable to comply with improvement notice

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) an improvement notice has been served on any person (“the original recipient”) in respect of any premises, and
  - (b) at a later date (“the changeover date”) that person ceases to be a person of the relevant category in respect of the premises.
- (2) In subsection (1) the reference to a person ceasing to be a “person of the relevant category” is a reference to his ceasing to fall within the description of person (such as, for example, the holder of a licence under Part 2 or 3 or the person managing a dwelling) by reference to which the improvement notice was served on him.
- (3) As from the changeover date, the liable person in respect of the premises is to be in the same position as if—
  - (a) the improvement notice had originally been served on him, and
  - (b) he had taken all steps relevant for the purposes of this Part which the original recipient had taken.
- (4) The effect of subsection (3) is that, in particular, any period for compliance with the notice or for bringing any appeal is unaffected.
- (5) But where the original recipient has become subject to any liability arising by virtue of this Part before the changeover date, subsection (3) does not have the effect of—
  - (a) relieving him of the liability, or
  - (b) making the new liable person subject to it.
- (6) Subsection (3) applies with any necessary modifications where a person to whom it applies (by virtue of any provision of this section) ceases to be the liable person in respect of the premises.
- (7) Unless subsection (8) or (9) applies, the person who is at any time the “liable person” in respect of any premises is the person having control of the premises.
- (8) If—
  - (a) the original recipient was served as the person managing the premises, and
  - (b) there is a new person managing the premises as from the changeover date, that new person is the “liable person”.
- (9) If the original recipient was served as an owner of the premises, the “liable person” is the owner’s successor in title on the changeover date.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Commencement Information**

**I17** S. 19 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 19 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 19 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 19 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## *Prohibition orders*

### **20 Prohibition orders relating to category 1 hazards: duty of authority to make order**

- (1) If—
- (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 1 hazard exists on any residential premises, and
  - (b) no management order is in force in relation to the premises under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4,
- making a prohibition order under this section in respect of the hazard is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard for the purposes of section 5 (category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action).
- (2) A prohibition order under this section is an order imposing such prohibition or prohibitions on the use of any premises as is or are specified in the order in accordance with subsections (3) and (4) and section 22.
- (3) The order may prohibit use of the following premises—
- (a) if the residential premises on which the hazard exists are a dwelling or HMO which is not a flat, it may prohibit use of the dwelling or HMO;
  - (b) if those premises are one or more flats, it may prohibit use of the building containing the flat or flats (or any part of the building) or any external common parts;
  - (c) if those premises are the common parts of a building containing one or more flats, it may prohibit use of the building (or any part of the building) or any external common parts.
- Paragraphs (b) and (c) are subject to subsection (4).
- (4) The notice may not, by virtue of subsection (3)(b) or (c), prohibit use of any part of the building or its external common parts that is not included in any residential premises on which the hazard exists, unless the authority are satisfied—
- (a) that the deficiency from which the hazard arises is situated there, and
  - (b) that it is necessary for such use to be prohibited in order to protect the health or safety of any actual or potential occupiers of one or more of the flats.
- (5) A prohibition order under this section may relate to more than one category 1 hazard on the same premises or in the same building containing one or more flats.
- (6) The operation of a prohibition order under this section may be suspended in accordance with section 23.



**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I18** S. 20 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 20 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 20 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 20 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 21 Prohibition orders relating to category 2 hazards: power of authority to make order

- (1) If—
- (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 2 hazard exists on any residential premises, and
  - (b) no management order is in force in relation to the premises under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4,
- the authority may make a prohibition order under this section in respect of the hazard.
- (2) A prohibition order under this section is an order imposing such prohibition or prohibitions on the use of any premises as is or are specified in the order in accordance with subsection (3) and section 22.
- (3) Subsections (3) and (4) of section 20 apply to a prohibition order under this section as they apply to one under that section.
- (4) A prohibition order under this section may relate to more than one category 2 hazard on the same premises or in the same building containing one or more flats.
- (5) A prohibition order under this section may be combined in one document with an order under section 20 where they impose prohibitions on the use of the same premises or on the use of premises in the same building containing one or more flats.
- (6) The operation of a prohibition order under this section may be suspended in accordance with section 23.

### Commencement Information

**I19** S. 21 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 21 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 21 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 21 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 22 Contents of prohibition orders

- (1) A prohibition order under section 20 or 21 must comply with the following provisions of this section.
- (2) The order must specify, in relation to the hazard (or each of the hazards) to which it relates—
- (a) whether the order is made under section 20 or 21,
  - (b) the nature of the hazard concerned and the residential premises on which it exists,
  - (c) the deficiency giving rise to the hazard,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (d) the premises in relation to which prohibitions are imposed by the order (see subsections (3) and (4)), and
  - (e) any remedial action which the authority consider would, if taken in relation to the hazard, result in their revoking the order under section 25.
- (3) The order may impose such prohibition or prohibitions on the use of any premises as—
- (a) comply with section 20(3) and (4), and
  - (b) the local housing authority consider appropriate in view of the hazard or hazards in respect of which the order is made.
- (4) Any such prohibition may prohibit use of any specified premises, or of any part of those premises, either—
- (a) for all purposes, or
  - (b) for any particular purpose,
- except (in either case) to the extent to which any use of the premises or part is approved by the authority.
- (5) A prohibition imposed by virtue of subsection (4)(b) may, in particular, relate to—
- (a) occupation of the premises or part by more than a particular number of households or persons; or
  - (b) occupation of the premises or part by particular descriptions of persons.
- (6) The order must also contain information about—
- (a) the right under Part 3 of Schedule 2 to appeal against the order, and
  - (b) the period within which an appeal may be made,
- and specify the date on which the order is made.
- (7) Any approval of the authority for the purposes of subsection (4) must not be unreasonably withheld.
- (8) If the authority do refuse to give any such approval, they must notify the person applying for the approval of—
- (a) their decision,
  - (b) the reasons for it and the date on which it was made,
  - (c) the right to appeal against the decision under subsection (9), and
  - (d) the period within which an appeal may be made,
- within the period of seven days beginning with the day on which the decision was made.
- (9) The person applying for the approval may appeal to [<sup>F1</sup>the appropriate tribunal] against the decision within the period of 28 days beginning with the date specified in the notice as the date on which it was made.
- (10) In this Part of this Act “specified premises”, in relation to a prohibition order, means premises specified in the order, in accordance with subsection (2)(d), as premises in relation to which prohibitions are imposed by the order.

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F1** Words in s. 22(9) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 150](#) (with Sch. 3)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I20** S. 22 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 22 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 22 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 22 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 23 Suspension of prohibition orders

- (1) A prohibition order may provide for the operation of the order to be suspended until a time, or the occurrence of an event, specified in the order.
- (2) The time so specified may, in particular, be the time when a person of a particular description begins, or ceases, to occupy any premises.
- (3) The event so specified may, in particular, be a notified breach of an undertaking accepted by the local housing authority for the purposes of this section from a person on whom a copy of the order is served.
- (4) In subsection (3) a “notified breach”, in relation to such an undertaking, means an act or omission by such a person—
  - (a) which the local housing authority consider to be a breach of the undertaking, and
  - (b) which is notified to that person in accordance with the terms of the undertaking.

### Commencement Information

**I21** S. 23 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 23 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 23 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 23 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 24 Operation of prohibition orders

- (1) This section deals with the time when a prohibition order becomes operative.
- (2) The general rule is that a prohibition order becomes operative at the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the date specified in the notice as the date on which it is made.
- (3) The general rule is subject to subsection (4) (suspended orders) and subsection (5) (appeals).
- (4) If the order is suspended under section 23, the order becomes operative at the time when the suspension ends.  
This is subject to subsection (5).
- (5) If an appeal is brought against the order under Part 3 of Schedule 2, the order does not become operative until such time (if any) as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 14 of that Schedule (time when order is confirmed on appeal, period for further appeal expires or suspension ends).

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) If no appeal against a prohibition order is made under that Part of that Schedule within the period for appealing against it, the order is final and conclusive as to matters which could have been raised on an appeal.
- (7) Sections 584A and 584B of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) provide for the payment of compensation where certain prohibition orders become operative, and for the repayment of such compensation in certain circumstances.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C5** S. 24 applied by Housing Act 1985 (c. 68), s. 300(5)(b) (as substituted (6.4.2006 (E.) and 16.6.2006 (W.)) by Housing Act 2004 (c. 34), ss. 265(1), 270(4)(5)(f), **Sch. 15 para. 20**); S.I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(d)** (with Sch.); S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(b)** (with Sch.)

**Commencement Information**

**I22** S. 24 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 24 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 24 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 24 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

**25 Revocation and variation of prohibition orders**

- (1) The local housing authority must revoke a prohibition order if at any time they are satisfied that the hazard in respect of which the order was made does not then exist on the residential premises specified in the order in accordance with section 22(2)(b).
- (2) The local housing authority may revoke a prohibition order if—
  - (a) in the case of an order made under section 20, they consider that there are any special circumstances making it appropriate to revoke the order; or
  - (b) in the case of an order made under section 21, they consider that it is appropriate to do so.
- (3) Where a prohibition order relates to a number of hazards—
  - (a) subsection (1) is to be read as applying separately in relation to each of those hazards, and
  - (b) if, as a result, the authority are required to revoke only part of the order, they may vary the remainder as they consider appropriate.
- (4) The local housing authority may vary a prohibition order—
  - (a) with the agreement of every person on whom copies of the notice were required to be served under Part 1 of Schedule 2, or
  - (b) in the case of an order whose operation is suspended, so as to alter the time or events by reference to which the suspension is to come to an end.
- (5) A revocation under this section comes into force at the time when it is made.
- (6) If it is made with the agreement of every person within subsection (4)(a), a variation under this section comes into force at the time when it is made.
- (7) Otherwise a variation under this section does not come into force until such time (if any) as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 15 of Schedule 2 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to revoke or vary is confirmed on appeal).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (8) The power to revoke or vary a prohibition order under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
- (a) on an application made by a person on whom a copy of the order was required to be served under Part 1 of Schedule 2, or
  - (b) on the authority's own initiative.

#### Commencement Information

**I23** S. 25 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 25 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 25 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 25 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 26 Review of suspended prohibition orders

- (1) The local housing authority may at any time review a prohibition order whose operation is suspended.
- (2) The local housing authority must review a prohibition order whose operation is suspended not later than one year after the date on which the order was made and at subsequent intervals of not more than one year.
- (3) Copies of the authority's decision on a review under this section must be served on every person on whom a copy of the order was required to be served under Part 1 of Schedule 2.

#### Commencement Information

**I24** S. 26 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 26 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 26 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 26 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 27 Service of copies of prohibition orders etc. and related appeals

Schedule 2 (which deals with the service of copies of prohibition orders, and notices relating to their revocation or variation, and with related appeals) has effect.

#### Commencement Information

**I25** S. 27 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 27 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 27 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 27 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### *Hazard awareness notices*

## 28 Hazard awareness notices relating to category 1 hazards: duty of authority to serve notice

- (1) If—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 1 hazard exists on any residential premises, and
- (b) no management order is in force in relation to the premises under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4,

serving a hazard awareness notice under this section in respect of the hazard is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard for the purposes of section 5 (category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action).

- (2) A hazard awareness notice under this section is a notice advising the person on whom it is served of the existence of a category 1 hazard on the residential premises concerned which arises as a result of a deficiency on the premises in respect of which the notice is served.
- (3) The notice may be served in respect of the following premises—
  - (a) if the residential premises on which the hazard exists are a dwelling or HMO which is not a flat, it may be served in respect of the dwelling or HMO;
  - (b) if those premises are one or more flats, it may be served in respect of the building containing the flat or flats (or any part of the building) or any external common parts;
  - (c) if those premises are the common parts of a building containing one or more flats, it may be served in respect of the building (or any part of the building) or any external common parts.

Paragraphs (b) and (c) are subject to subsection (4).

- (4) The notice may not, by virtue of subsection (3)(b) or (c), be served in respect of any part of the building or its external common parts that is not included in any residential premises on which the hazard exists, unless the authority are satisfied—
  - (a) that the deficiency from which the hazard arises is situated there, and
  - (b) that it is desirable for the notice to be so served in the interests of the health or safety of any actual or potential occupiers of one or more of the flats.
- (5) A notice under this section may relate to more than one category 1 hazard on the same premises or in the same building containing one or more flats.
- (6) A notice under this section must specify, in relation to the hazard (or each of the hazards) to which it relates—
  - (a) the nature of the hazard and the residential premises on which it exists,
  - (b) the deficiency giving rise to the hazard,
  - (c) the premises on which the deficiency exists,
  - (d) the authority’s reasons for deciding to serve the notice, including their reasons for deciding that serving the notice is the most appropriate course of action, and
  - (e) details of the remedial action (if any) which the authority consider that it would be practicable and appropriate to take in relation to the hazard.
- (7) Part 1 of Schedule 1 (which relates to the service of improvement notices and copies of such notices) applies to a notice under this section as if it were an improvement notice.
- (8) For that purpose, any reference in that Part of that Schedule to “the specified premises” is, in relation to a hazard awareness notice under this section, a reference to the premises specified under subsection (6)(c).

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I26** S. 28 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 28 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 28 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 28 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 29 Hazard awareness notices relating to category 2 hazards: power of authority to serve notice

- (1) If—
  - (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 2 hazard exists on any residential premises, and
  - (b) no management order is in force in relation to the premises under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4,
 the authority may serve a hazard awareness notice under this section in respect of the hazard.
- (2) A hazard awareness notice under this section is a notice advising the person on whom it is served of the existence of a category 2 hazard on the residential premises concerned which arises as a result of a deficiency on the premises in respect of which the notice is served.
- (3) Subsections (3) and (4) of section 28 apply to a hazard awareness notice under this section as they apply to one under that section.
- (4) A notice under this section may relate to more than one category 2 hazard on the same premises or in the same building containing one or more flats.
- (5) A notice under this section must specify, in relation to the hazard (or each of the hazards) to which it relates—
  - (a) the nature of the hazard and the residential premises on which it exists,
  - (b) the deficiency giving rise to the hazard,
  - (c) the premises on which the deficiency exists,
  - (d) the authority’s reasons for deciding to serve the notice, including their reasons for deciding that serving the notice is the most appropriate course of action, and
  - (e) details of the remedial action (if any) which the authority consider that it would be practicable and appropriate to take in relation to the hazard.
- (6) A notice under this section may be combined in one document with a notice under section 28 where they are served in respect of the same premises.
- (7) Part 1 of Schedule 1 (which relates to the service of improvement notices and copies of such notices) applies to a notice under this section as if it were an improvement notice.
- (8) For that purpose, any reference in that Part of that Schedule to “the specified premises” is, in relation to a hazard awareness notice under this section, a reference to the premises specified under subsection (5)(c).

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I27** S. 29 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 29 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 29 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 29 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

#### *Enforcement: improvement notices*

### 30 Offence of failing to comply with improvement notice

- (1) Where an improvement notice has become operative, the person on whom the notice was served commits an offence if he fails to comply with it.
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter compliance with an improvement notice means, in relation to each hazard, beginning and completing any remedial action specified in the notice—
  - (a) (if no appeal is brought against the notice) not later than the date specified under section 13(2)(e) and within the period specified under section 13(2)(f);
  - (b) (if an appeal is brought against the notice and is not withdrawn) not later than such date and within such period as may be fixed by the tribunal determining the appeal; and
  - (c) (if an appeal brought against the notice is withdrawn) not later than the 21st day after the date on which the notice becomes operative and within the period (beginning on that 21st day) specified in the notice under section 13(2)(f).
- (3) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (4) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1) it is a defence that he had a reasonable excuse for failing to comply with the notice.
- (5) The obligation to take any remedial action specified in the notice in relation to a hazard continues despite the fact that the period for completion of the action has expired.
- (6) In this section any reference to any remedial action specified in a notice includes a reference to any part of any remedial action which is required to be completed within a particular period specified in the notice.
- [<sup>F2</sup>(7) See also section 249A (financial penalties as alternative to prosecution for certain housing offences in England).
- (8) If a local housing authority has imposed a financial penalty on a person under section 249A in respect of conduct amounting to an offence under this section the person may not be convicted of an offence under this section in respect of the conduct.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2** S. 30(7)(8) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), **Sch. 9 para. 2**; S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(f)



*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C6** S. 30(1) modified (6.4.2017 for specified purposes, 6.4.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 40(4)**, 216(3); [S.I. 2017/281](#), [reg. 4\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 5](#)); [S.I. 2018/393](#), [reg. 2\(a\)](#)

#### **Commencement Information**

- I28** S. 30 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 30 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 30 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 30 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

### **31 Enforcement action by local housing authorities**

Schedule 3 (which enables enforcement action in respect of an improvement notice to be taken by local housing authorities either with or without agreement and which provides for the recovery of related expenses) has effect.

#### **Commencement Information**

- I29** S. 31 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 31 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 31 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 31 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

#### *Enforcement: prohibition orders*

### **32 Offence of failing to comply with prohibition order etc.**

- (1) A person commits an offence if, knowing that a prohibition order has become operative in relation to any specified premises, he—
  - (a) uses the premises in contravention of the order, or
  - (b) permits the premises to be so used.
- (2) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction—
  - (a) to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, and
  - (b) to a further fine not exceeding £20 for every day or part of a day on which he so uses the premises, or permits them to be so used, after conviction.
- (3) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1) it is a defence that he had a reasonable excuse for using the premises, or (as the case may be) permitting them to be used, in contravention of the order.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C7** S. 32(1) modified (6.4.2017 for specified purposes, 6.4.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 40(4)**, 216(3); [S.I. 2017/281](#), [reg. 4\(a\)](#) (with [reg. 5](#)); [S.I. 2018/393](#), [reg. 2\(a\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Commencement Information

**I30** S. 32 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 32 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 32 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 32 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 33 Recovery of possession of premises in order to comply with order

Nothing in—

- (a) the Rent Act 1977 (c. 42) or the Rent (Agriculture) Act 1976 (c. 80), or
- (b) Part 1 of the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50),

prevents possession being obtained by the owner of any specified premises in relation to which a prohibition order is operative if possession of the premises is necessary for the purpose of complying with the order.

#### Commencement Information

**I31** S. 33 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 33 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 33 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 33 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 34 Power of tribunal to determine or vary lease

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where—
  - (a) a prohibition order has become operative, and
  - (b) the whole or part of any specified premises form the whole or part of the subject matter of a lease.
- (2) The lessor or the lessee may apply to [<sup>F3</sup>the appropriate tribunal] for an order determining or varying the lease.
- (3) On such an application the tribunal may make an order determining or varying the lease, if it considers it appropriate to do so.
- (4) Before making such an order, the tribunal must give any sub-lessee an opportunity of being heard.
- (5) An order under this section may be unconditional or subject to such terms and conditions as the tribunal considers appropriate.
- (6) The conditions may, in particular, include conditions about the payment of money by one party to the proceedings to another by way of compensation, damages or otherwise.
- (7) In deciding what is appropriate for the purposes of this section, the tribunal must have regard to the respective rights, obligations and liabilities of the parties under the lease and to all the other circumstances of the case.
- (8) In this section “lessor” and “lessee” include a person deriving title under a lessor or lessee.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F3** Words in s. 34(2) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), [art. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 151](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

### Commencement Information

- I32** S. 34 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 34 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 34 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 34 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

*Enforcement: improvement notices and prohibition orders*

## 35 Power of court to order occupier or owner to allow action to be taken on premises

- (1) This section applies where an improvement notice or prohibition order has become operative.
- (2) If the occupier of any specified premises—
  - (a) has received reasonable notice of any intended action in relation to the premises, but
  - (b) is preventing a relevant person, or any representative of a relevant person or of the local housing authority, from taking that action in relation to the premises,
 

a magistrates' court may order the occupier to permit to be done on the premises anything which the court considers is necessary or expedient for the purpose of enabling the intended action to be taken.
- (3) If a relevant person—
  - (a) has received reasonable notice of any intended action in relation to any specified premises, but
  - (b) is preventing a representative of the local housing authority from taking that action in relation to the premises,
 

a magistrates' court may order the relevant person to permit to be done on the premises anything which the court considers is necessary or expedient for the purpose of enabling the intended action to be taken.
- (4) A person who fails to comply with an order of the court under this section commits an offence.
- (5) In proceedings for an offence under subsection (4) it is a defence that the person had a reasonable excuse for failing to comply with the order.
- (6) A person who commits an offence under subsection (4) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding £20 in respect of each day or part of a day during which the failure continues.
- (7) In this section “intended action”, in relation to any specified premises, means—
  - (a) where an improvement notice has become operative, any action which the person on whom that notice has been served is required by the notice to take in relation to the premises and which—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) (in the context of subsection (2)) is proposed to be taken by or on behalf of that person or on behalf of the local housing authority in pursuance of Schedule 3, or
  - (b) (in the context of subsection (3)) is proposed to be taken on behalf of the local housing authority in pursuance of Schedule 3;
  - (b) where a prohibition order has become operative, any action which is proposed to be taken and which either is necessary for the purpose of giving effect to the order or is remedial action specified in the order in accordance with section 22(2)(e).
- (8) In this section—
- “relevant person”, in relation to any premises, means a person who is an owner of the premises, a person having control of or managing the premises, or the holder of any licence under Part 2 or 3 in respect of the premises;
  - “representative” in relation to a relevant person or a local housing authority, means any officer, employee, agent or contractor of that person or authority.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I33** S. 35 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 35 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 35 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 35 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### **36 Power of court to authorise action by one owner on behalf of another**

- (1) Where an improvement notice or prohibition order has become operative, an owner of any specified premises may apply to a magistrates' court for an order under subsection (2).
- (2) A magistrates' court may, on an application under subsection (1), make an order enabling the applicant—
  - (a) immediately to enter on the premises, and
  - (b) to take any required action within a period fixed by the order.
- (3) In this section “required action” means—
  - (a) in the case of an improvement notice, any remedial action which is required to be taken by the notice;
  - (b) in the case of a prohibition order, any action necessary for the purpose of complying with the order or any remedial action specified in the order in accordance with section 22(2)(e).
- (4) No order may be made under subsection (2) unless the court is satisfied that the interests of the applicant will be prejudiced as a result of a failure by another person to take any required action.
- (5) No order may be made under subsection (2) unless notice of the application has been given to the local housing authority.
- (6) If it considers that it is appropriate to do so, the court may make an order in favour of any other owner of the premises which is similar to the order that it is making in relation to the premises under subsection (2).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Commencement Information

**I34** S. 36 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 36 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 36 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 36 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

#### Supplementary provisions

### 37 Effect of improvement notices and prohibition orders as local land charges

- (1) An improvement notice or a prohibition order under this Chapter is a local land charge if subsection (2), (3) or (4) applies.
- (2) This subsection applies if the notice or order has become operative.
- (3) This subsection applies if—
  - (a) the notice or order is suspended under section 14 or 23, and
  - (b) the period for appealing against it under Part 3 of Schedule 1 or 2 has expired without an appeal having been brought.
- (4) This subsection applies if—
  - (a) the notice or order is suspended under section 14 or 23,
  - (b) an appeal has been brought against it under Part 3 of Schedule 1 or 2, and
  - (c) were it not suspended—
    - (i) the notice would have become operative under section 15(5) by virtue of paragraph 19(2) of Schedule 1 (improvement notices: confirmation on appeal or expiry of period for further appeal), or
    - (ii) the order would have become operative under section 24(5) by virtue of paragraph 14(2) of Schedule 2 (prohibition orders: confirmation on appeal or expiry of period for further appeal).

#### Commencement Information

**I35** S. 37 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 37 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 37 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 37 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 38 Savings for rights arising from breach of covenant etc.

- (1) Nothing in this Chapter affects any remedy of an owner for breach of any covenant or contract entered into by a tenant in connection with any premises which are specified premises in relation to an improvement notice or prohibition order.
- (2) If an owner is obliged to take possession of any premises in order to comply with an improvement notice or prohibition order, the taking of possession does not affect his right to take advantage of any such breach which occurred before he took possession.
- (3) No action taken under this Chapter affects any remedy available to the tenant of any premises against his landlord (whether at common law or otherwise).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### **Commencement Information**

**I36** S. 38 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 38 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 38 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 38 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### **39 Effect of Part 4 enforcement action and redevelopment proposals**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if—
  - (a) an improvement notice or prohibition order has been served or made under this Chapter, and
  - (b) a management order under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4 comes into force in relation to the specified premises.
- (2) The improvement notice or prohibition order—
  - (a) if operative at the time when the management order comes into force, ceases to have effect at that time, and
  - (b) otherwise is to be treated as from that time as if it had not been served or made.
- (3) Subsection (2)(a) does not affect any right acquired or liability (civil or criminal) incurred before the improvement notice or prohibition order ceases to have effect.
- (4) Subsection (5) applies where, under section 308 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (owner's re-development proposals), the local housing authority have approved proposals for the re-development of land.
- (5) No action is to be taken under this Chapter in relation to the land if, and so long as, the re-development is being proceeded with (subject to any variation or extension approved by the authority)—
  - (a) in accordance with the proposals; and
  - (b) within the time limits specified by the local housing authority.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I37** S. 39 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 39 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 39 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 39 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## **CHAPTER 3**

### EMERGENCY MEASURES

#### *Emergency remedial action*

### **40 Emergency remedial action**

- (1) If—
  - (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 1 hazard exists on any residential premises, and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) they are further satisfied that the hazard involves an imminent risk of serious harm to the health or safety of any of the occupiers of those or any other residential premises, and
- (c) no management order is in force under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4 in relation to the premises mentioned in paragraph (a),

the taking by the authority of emergency remedial action under this section in respect of the hazard is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard for the purposes of section 5 (category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action).

- (2) “Emergency remedial action” means such remedial action in respect of the hazard concerned as the authority consider immediately necessary in order to remove the imminent risk of serious harm within subsection (1)(b).
- (3) Emergency remedial action under this section may be taken by the authority in relation to any premises in relation to which remedial action could be required to be taken by an improvement notice under section 11 (see subsections (3) and (4) of that section).
- (4) Emergency remedial action under this section may be taken by the authority in respect of more than one category 1 hazard on the same premises or in the same building containing one or more flats.
- (5) Paragraphs 3 to 5 of Schedule 3 (improvement notices: enforcement action by local authorities) apply in connection with the taking of emergency remedial action under this section as they apply in connection with the taking of the remedial action required by an improvement notice which has become operative but has not been complied with.

But those paragraphs so apply with the modifications set out in subsection (6).

- (6) The modifications are as follows—
  - (a) the right of entry conferred by paragraph 3(4) may be exercised at any time; and
  - (b) the notice required by paragraph 4 (notice before entering premises) must (instead of being served in accordance with that paragraph) be served on every person, who to the authority’s knowledge—
    - (i) is an occupier of the premises in relation to which the authority propose to take emergency remedial action, or
    - (ii) if those premises are common parts of a building containing one or more flats, is an occupier of any part of the building; but
  - (c) that notice is to be regarded as so served if a copy of it is fixed to some conspicuous part of the premises or building.
- (7) Within the period of seven days beginning with the date when the authority start taking emergency remedial action, the authority must serve—
  - (a) a notice under section 41, and
  - (b) copies of such a notice,on the persons on whom the authority would be required under Part 1 of Schedule 1 to serve an improvement notice and copies of it.
- (8) Section 240 (warrant to authorise entry) applies for the purpose of enabling a local housing authority to enter any premises to take emergency remedial action under this section in relation to the premises, as if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) that purpose were mentioned in subsection (2) of that section, and
  - (b) the circumstances as to which the justice of the peace must be satisfied under subsection (4) were that there are reasonable grounds for believing that the authority will not be able to gain admission to the premises without a warrant.
- (9) For the purposes of the operation of any provision relating to improvement notices as it applies by virtue of this section in connection with emergency remedial action or a notice under section 41, any reference in that provision to the specified premises is to be read as a reference to the premises specified, in accordance with section 41(2)(c), as those in relation to which emergency remedial action has been (or is to be) taken.

#### Commencement Information

**I38** S. 40 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 40 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 40 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 40 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 41 Notice of emergency remedial action

- (1) The notice required by section 40(7) is a notice which complies with the following requirements of this section.
- (2) The notice must specify, in relation to the hazard (or each of the hazards) to which it relates—
- (a) the nature of the hazard and the residential premises on which it exists,
  - (b) the deficiency giving rise to the hazard,
  - (c) the premises in relation to which emergency remedial action has been (or is to be) taken by the authority under section 40 and the nature of that remedial action,
  - (d) the power under which that remedial action has been (or is to be) taken by the authority, and
  - (e) the date when that remedial action was (or is to be) started.
- (3) The notice must contain information about—
- (a) the right to appeal under section 45 against the decision of the authority to make the order, and
  - (b) the period within which an appeal may be made.

#### Commencement Information

**I39** S. 41 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 41 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 41 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 41 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 42 Recovery of expenses of taking emergency remedial action

- (1) This section relates to the recovery by a local housing authority of expenses reasonably incurred in taking emergency remedial action under section 40 (“emergency expenses”).



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Paragraphs 6 to 14 of Schedule 3 (improvement notices: enforcement action by local authorities) apply for the purpose of enabling a local housing authority to recover emergency expenses as they apply for the purpose of enabling such an authority to recover expenses incurred in taking remedial action under paragraph 3 of that Schedule.

But those paragraphs so apply with the modifications set out in subsection (3).

- (3) The modifications are as follows—
- (a) any reference to the improvement notice is to be read as a reference to the notice under section 41; and
  - (b) no amount is recoverable in respect of any emergency expenses until such time (if any) as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection (see subsection (4)).
- (4) This subsection gives the meaning of “the operative time” for the purposes of subsection (3)—
- (a) if no appeal against the authority’s decision to take the emergency remedial action is made under section 45 before the end of the period of 28 days mentioned in subsection (3)(a) of that section, “the operative time” is the end of that period;
  - (b) if an appeal is made under that section within that period and a decision is given on the appeal which confirms the authority’s decision, “the operative time” is as follows—
    - (i) if the period within which an appeal to the [F4Upper Tribunal] may be brought expires without such an appeal having been brought, “the operative time” is the end of that period;
    - (ii) if an appeal to the [F4Upper Tribunal] is brought, “the operative time” is the time when a decision is given on the appeal which confirms the authority’s decision.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)—
- (a) the withdrawal of an appeal has the same effect as a decision which confirms the authority’s decision, and
  - (b) references to a decision which confirms the authority’s decision are to a decision which confirms it with or without variation.

#### Textual Amendments

- F4** Words in s. 42(4)(b)(i)(ii) substituted (1.6.2009) by [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 1 para. 272** (with Sch. 5)

#### Commencement Information

- I40** S. 42 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 42 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 42 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 42 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Emergency prohibition orders*

#### **43 Emergency prohibition orders**

- (1) If—
- (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 1 hazard exists on any residential premises, and
  - (b) they are further satisfied that the hazard involves an imminent risk of serious harm to the health or safety of any of the occupiers of those or any other residential premises, and
  - (c) no management order is in force under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4 in relation to the premises mentioned in paragraph (a),
- making an emergency prohibition order under this section in respect of the hazard is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard for the purposes of section 5 (category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action).
- (2) An emergency prohibition order under this section is an order imposing, with immediate effect, such prohibition or prohibitions on the use of any premises as are specified in the order in accordance with subsection (3) and section 44.
- (3) As regards the imposition of any such prohibition or prohibitions, the following provisions apply to an emergency prohibition order as they apply to a prohibition order under section 20—
- (a) subsections (3) to (5) of that section, and
  - (b) subsections (3) to (5) and (7) to (9) of section 22.
- (4) Part 1 of Schedule 2 (service of copies of prohibition orders) applies in relation to an emergency prohibition order as it applies to a prohibition order, but any requirement to serve copies within a specified period of seven days is to be read as a reference to serve them on the day on which the emergency prohibition order is made (or, if that is not possible, as soon after that day as is possible).
- (5) The following provisions also apply to an emergency prohibition order as they apply to a prohibition order (or to a prohibition order which has become operative, as the case may be)—
- (a) section 25 (revocation and variation);
  - (b) sections 32 to 36 (enforcement);
  - (c) sections 37 to 39 (supplementary provisions); and
  - (d) Part 2 of Schedule 2 (notices relating to revocation or variation);
  - (e) Part 3 of that Schedule (appeals) so far as it relates to any decision to vary, or to refuse to revoke or vary, a prohibition order; and
  - (f) sections 584A and 584B of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (payment, and repayment, of compensation).
- (6) For the purposes of the operation of any provision relating to prohibition orders as it applies in connection with emergency prohibition orders by virtue of this section or section 45, any reference in that provision to the specified premises is to be read as a reference to the premises specified, in accordance with section 44(2)(c), as the premises in relation to which prohibitions are imposed by the order.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Commencement Information

**I41** S. 43 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 43 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 43 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 43 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 44 Contents of emergency prohibition orders

- (1) An emergency prohibition order under section 43 must comply with the following requirements of this section.
- (2) The order must specify, in relation to the hazard (or each of the hazards) to which it relates—
  - (a) the nature of the hazard concerned and the residential premises on which it exists,
  - (b) the deficiency giving rise to the hazard,
  - (c) the premises in relation to which prohibitions are imposed by the order (see subsections (3) and (4) of section 22 as applied by section 43(3)), and
  - (d) any remedial action which the authority consider would, if taken in relation to the hazard, result in their revoking the order under section 25 (as applied by section 43(5)).
- (3) The order must contain information about—
  - (a) the right to appeal under section 45 against the order, and
  - (b) the period within which an appeal may be made,and specify the date on which the order is made.

#### Commencement Information

**I42** S. 44 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 44 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 44 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 44 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### *Appeals*

## 45 Appeals relating to emergency measures

- (1) A person on whom a notice under section 41 has been served in connection with the taking of emergency remedial action under section 40 may appeal to [<sup>F5</sup>the appropriate tribunal] against the decision of the local housing authority to take that action.
- (2) A relevant person may appeal to [<sup>F6</sup>the appropriate tribunal] against an emergency prohibition order.
- (3) An appeal under subsection (1) or (2) must be made within the period of 28 days beginning with—
  - (a) the date specified in the notice under section 41 as the date when the emergency remedial action was (or was to be) started, or
  - (b) the date specified in the emergency prohibition order as the date on which the order was made,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

as the case may be.

- (4) [<sup>F7</sup>The appropriate tribunal] may allow an appeal to be made to it after the end of that period if it is satisfied that there is a good reason for the failure to appeal before the end of that period (and for any delay since then in applying for permission to appeal out of time).
- (5) An appeal under subsection (1) or (2)—
- (a) is to be by way of a re-hearing, but
  - (b) may be determined having regard to matters of which the authority were unaware.
- (6) The tribunal may—
- (a) in the case of an appeal under subsection (1), confirm, reverse or vary the decision of the authority;
  - (b) in the case of an appeal under subsection (2), confirm or vary the emergency prohibition order or make an order revoking it as from a date specified in that order.
- (7) Paragraph 16 of Schedule 2 applies for the purpose of identifying who is a relevant person for the purposes of subsection (2) in relation to an emergency prohibition order as it applies for the purpose of identifying who is a relevant person for the purposes of Part 3 of that Schedule in relation to a prohibition order.

#### Textual Amendments

- F5** Words in s. 45(1) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 152\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3)
- F6** Words in s. 45(2) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 152\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 3)
- F7** Words in s. 45(4) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 152\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

- I43** S. 45 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 45 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 45 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); s. 45 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

## CHAPTER 4

### DEMOLITION ORDERS AND SLUM CLEARANCE DECLARATIONS

#### *Demolition orders*

#### 46 Demolition orders

For section 265 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) substitute—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## “265 Demolition orders

- (1) If—
  - (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 1 hazard exists in a dwelling or HMO which is not a flat, and
  - (b) this subsection is not disapplied by subsection (5),making a demolition order in respect of the dwelling or HMO is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard for the purposes of section 5 of the Housing Act 2004 (category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action).
- (2) If, in the case of any building containing one or more flats—
  - (a) the local housing authority are satisfied that a category 1 hazard exists in one or more of the flats contained in the building or in any common parts of the building, and
  - (b) this subsection is not disapplied by subsection (5),making a demolition order in respect of the building is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard for the purposes of section 5 of the Housing Act 2004.
- (3) The local housing authority may make a demolition order in respect of a dwelling or HMO which is not a flat if—
  - (a) they are satisfied that a category 2 hazard exists in the dwelling or HMO,
  - (b) this subsection is not disapplied by subsection (5), and
  - (c) the circumstances of the case are circumstances specified or described in an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (4) The local housing authority may make a demolition order in respect of any building containing one or more flats if—
  - (a) they are satisfied that a category 2 hazard exists in one or more of the flats contained in the building or in any common parts of the building,
  - (b) this subsection is not disapplied by subsection (5), and
  - (c) the circumstances of the case are circumstances specified or described in an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (5) None of subsections (1) to (4) applies if a management order under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4 is in force in relation to the premises concerned.
- (6) This section also has effect subject to section 304(1) (no demolition order to be made in respect of listed building).
- (7) In this section “HMO” means house in multiple occupation.
- (8) An order made under subsection (3) or (4)—
  - (a) may make different provision for different cases or descriptions of case (including different provision for different areas);
  - (b) may contain such incidental, supplementary, consequential, transitory, transitional or saving provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(c) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

(9) Sections 584A and 584B provide for the payment of compensation where demolition orders are made under this section, and for the repayment of such compensation in certain circumstances.”

#### Commencement Information

**I44** S. 46 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 46 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 46 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 46 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### *Slum clearance declarations*

#### 47 Clearance areas

In section 289 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (declaration of clearance area) for subsections (2) and (2A) substitute—

“(2) If the local housing authority are satisfied, in relation to any area—

- (a) that each of the residential buildings in the area contains a category 1 hazard, and
- (b) that the other buildings (if any) in the area are dangerous or harmful to the health or safety of the inhabitants of the area,

declaring the area to be a clearance area is a course of action available to the authority in relation to the hazard or hazards for the purposes of section 5 of the Housing Act 2004 (category 1 hazards: general duty to take enforcement action).

(2ZA) The local housing authority may declare an area to be a clearance area if they are satisfied that—

- (a) the residential buildings in the area are dangerous or harmful to the health or safety of the inhabitants of the area as a result of their bad arrangement or the narrowness or bad arrangement of the streets; and
- (b) that the other buildings (if any) in the area are dangerous or harmful to the health or safety of the inhabitants of the area.

(2ZB) The local housing authority may declare an area to be a clearance area if they are satisfied that—

- (a) that each of the residential buildings in the area contains a category 2 hazard,
- (b) that the other buildings (if any) in the area are dangerous or harmful to the health or safety of the inhabitants of the area, and
- (c) the circumstances of the case are circumstances specified or described in an order made by the Secretary of State.

Subsection (8) of section 265 applies in relation to an order under this subsection as it applies in relation to an order under subsection (3) or (4) of that section.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(2ZC) In this section “residential buildings” means buildings which are dwellings or houses in multiple occupation or contain one or more flats.

This is subject to subsection (2ZD).

(2ZD) For the purposes of subsection (2) or (2ZB)—

- (a) subsection (2ZC) applies as if “two or more flats” were substituted for “one or more flats”; and
- (b) a residential building containing two or more flats is only to be treated as containing a category 1 or 2 hazard if two or more of the flats within it contain such a hazard.

(2ZE) Subsections (2) to (2ZB) are subject to subsections (2B) to (4) and (5B).”

#### Commencement Information

**I45** S. 47 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 47 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 47 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 47 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### Appeals

#### 48 Transfer of jurisdiction in respect of appeals relating to demolition orders etc.

- (1) Part 9 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (slum clearance) is further amended as follows.
- (2) In section 269 (right of appeal against demolition order etc.)—
  - (a) in subsection (1), for “the county court” substitute “ a residential property tribunal ”;
  - (b) in subsection (3), for “court” substitute “ tribunal ”; and
  - (c) in subsection (6)(a) and (b), for “Court of Appeal” substitute “ Lands Tribunal ”.
- (3) In section 272 (demolition orders)—
  - (a) in subsection (2), for “the court” in the first place it appears substitute “ a residential property tribunal ”, and in the second place it appears substitute “ such a tribunal ”;
  - (b) in subsection (5), for the words from the beginning to “and has” substitute “ A residential property tribunal has jurisdiction to hear and determine proceedings under subsection (1) (as well as those under subsection (2)), and a county court has ”; and
  - (c) in subsection (6), for “the court” substitute “ a tribunal or court ”.
- (4) In section 317 (power of court to determine lease where premises demolished etc.)—
  - (a) in subsection (1), for “the county court” substitute “ a residential property tribunal ”; and
  - (b) in subsections (2) and (3), for “court” substitute “ tribunal ”.
- (5) In section 318 (power of court to authorise execution of works on unfit premises or for improvement)—
  - (a) in the sidenote, for “court” substitute “ tribunal ”;

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in subsection (1), for “the court” in the first place it appears substitute “ a residential property tribunal ”, and in the second place it appears substitute “ the tribunal ”;
- (c) in subsections (2) and (3), for “court” substitute “ tribunal ”; and
- (d) omit subsection (4).

#### Commencement Information

**I46** S. 48 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 48 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 48 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 48 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## CHAPTER 5

### GENERAL AND MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS RELATING TO ENFORCEMENT ACTION

#### *Recovery of expenses relating to enforcement action*

#### **49 Power to charge for certain enforcement action**

- (1) A local housing authority may make such reasonable charge as they consider appropriate as a means of recovering certain administrative and other expenses incurred by them in—
  - (a) serving an improvement notice under section 11 or 12;
  - (b) making a prohibition order under section 20 or 21;
  - (c) serving a hazard awareness notice under section 28 or 29;
  - (d) taking emergency remedial action under section 40;
  - (e) making an emergency prohibition order under section 43; or
  - (f) making a demolition order under section 265 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68).
- (2) The expenses are, in the case of the service of an improvement notice or a hazard awareness notice, the expenses incurred in—
  - (a) determining whether to serve the notice,
  - (b) identifying any action to be specified in the notice, and
  - (c) serving the notice.
- (3) The expenses are, in the case of emergency remedial action under section 40, the expenses incurred in—
  - (a) determining whether to take such action, and
  - (b) serving the notice required by subsection (7) of that section.
- (4) The expenses are, in the case of a prohibition order under section 20 or 21 of this Act, an emergency prohibition order under section 43 or a demolition order under section 265 of the Housing Act 1985, the expenses incurred in—
  - (a) determining whether to make the order, and
  - (b) serving copies of the order on persons as owners of premises.
- (5) A local housing authority may make such reasonable charge as they consider appropriate as a means of recovering expenses incurred by them in—



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) carrying out any review under section 17 or 26, or
  - (b) serving copies of the authority's decision on such a review.
- (6) The amount of the charge may not exceed such amount as is specified by order of the appropriate national authority.
- (7) Where a tribunal allows an appeal against the underlying notice or order mentioned in subsection (1), it may make such order as it considers appropriate reducing, quashing, or requiring the repayment of, any charge under this section made in respect of the notice or order.

#### Commencement Information

**I47** S. 49 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 49 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 49 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 49 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S. I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 50 Recovery of charge under section 49

- (1) This section relates to the recovery by a local housing authority of a charge made by them under section 49.
- (2) In the case of—
- (a) an improvement notice under section 11 or 12, or
  - (b) a hazard awareness notice under section 28 or 29,
- the charge may be recovered from the person on whom the notice is served.
- (3) In the case of emergency remedial action under section 40, the charge may be recovered from the person served with the notice required by subsection (7) of that section.
- (4) In the case of—
- (a) a prohibition order under section 20 or 21,
  - (b) an emergency prohibition order under section 43, or
  - (c) a demolition order under section 265 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68),
- the charge may be recovered from any person on whom a copy of the order is served as an owner of the premises.
- (5) A demand for payment of the charge must be served on the person from whom the authority seek to recover it.
- (6) The demand becomes operative, if no appeal is brought against the underlying notice or order, at the end of the period of 21 days beginning with the date of service of the demand.
- (7) If such an appeal is brought and a decision is given on the appeal which confirms the underlying notice or order, the demand becomes operative at the time when—
- (a) the period within which an appeal to the [<sup>F8</sup>Upper Tribunal] may be brought expires without such an appeal having been brought, or
  - (b) a decision is given on such an appeal which confirms the notice or order.
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (7)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the withdrawal of an appeal has the same effect as a decision which confirms the notice or order, and
  - (b) references to a decision which confirms the notice or order are to a decision which confirms it with or without variation.
- (9) As from the time when the demand becomes operative, the sum recoverable by the authority is, until recovered, a charge on the premises concerned.
- (10) The charge takes effect at that time as a legal charge which is a local land charge.
- (11) For the purpose of enforcing the charge the authority have the same powers and remedies under the Law of Property Act 1925 (c. 20) and otherwise as if they were mortgagees by deed having powers of sale and lease, of accepting surrenders of leases and of appointing a receiver.
- (12) The power of appointing a receiver is exercisable at any time after the end of the period of one month beginning with the date on which the charge takes effect.
- (13) The appropriate national authority may by regulations prescribe the form of, and the particulars to be contained in, a demand for payment of any charge under section 49.

#### Textual Amendments

- F8** Words in s. 50(7)(a) substituted (1.6.2009) by [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 1 para. 273** (with [Sch. 5](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I48** S. 50 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 50 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see [s. 270\(2\)\(b\)](#); s. 50 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 50 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

### *Repeals*

#### 51 Repeal of power to improve existing enforcement procedures

Omit section 86 of the Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996 (c. 53) (power to improve existing enforcement procedures in relation to unfitness for human habitation etc.).

#### Commencement Information

- I49** S. 51 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 51 not in force at Royal Assent see [s. 270\(4\)\(5\)](#); s. 51 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 51 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

#### 52 Repeal of provisions relating to demolition of obstructive buildings

Omit sections 283 to 288 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (demolition of obstructive buildings).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Commencement Information

**I50** S. 52 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 52 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 52 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 52 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 53 Miscellaneous repeals etc. in relation to fire hazards

- (1) In the London Building Acts (Amendment) Act 1939 (c. xcvi)—
- (a) omit section 35(1)(c)(i) (protection against fire in certain old buildings let in flats or tenements);
  - (b) in section 36(1) (projecting shops in which persons are employed or sleep) omit “or sleep”; and
  - (c) in section 37(1) (means of access to roofs), in paragraph (b) for the words from “except” onwards substitute “except to the extent that it is occupied for residential purposes;”.
- (2) In the County of Merseyside Act 1980 (c. x) omit section 48 (means of escape from fire) and section 49(1) and (2) (maintenance of means of escape from fire).
- (3) In the Building Act 1984 (c. 55) omit section 72(6)(a) (means of escape from fire in case of certain buildings let in flats or tenements).
- (4) In the Leicestershire Act 1985 (c. xvii) omit section 54(6)(a) (means of escape from fire in case of certain buildings used as flats or tenements).

#### Commencement Information

**I51** S. 53 partly in force; s. 53 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 53 in force for E. at 6.4.2007 by S.I. 2007/1068, art. 2(a)

### Index

### 54 Index of defined expressions: Part 1

The following table shows where expressions used in this Part are defined or otherwise explained.

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Provision of this Act</i>
Appropriate national authority	Section 261(1)
Building containing one or more flats	Section 1(5)
Category 1 hazard	Section 2(1)
Category 2 hazard	Section 2(1)
Common parts	Section 1(5)
Compliance with improvement notice	Section 30(2)
District of local housing authority	Section 261(6)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Dwelling	Section 1(5), (6)
External common parts	Section 1(5)
Flat	Section 1(5) to (7)
Hazard	Section 2(1)
Hazard awareness notice	Section 28(2) or 29(2)
Health	Section 2(5)
HMO	Section 1(5), (6) (and see also section 1(8))
Improvement notice	Section 11(2) or 12(2)
Lease, lessee etc.	Section 262(1) to (4)
Local housing authority	Section 261(2) to (5)
Occupier (and related expressions)	Section 262(6)
Owner	Section 262(7)
Person having control	Section 263(1) and (2)
Person managing	Section 263(3) and (4)
Prohibition order	Section 20(2) or 21(2)
Remedial action	Section 11(8)
Residential premises	Section 1(4)
Residential property tribunal	Section 229
Specified premises, in relation to an improvement notice	Section 13(5)
Specified premises, in relation to a prohibition order	Section 22(10)
Tenancy, tenant	Section 262(1) to (5)
Unoccupied HMO accommodation	Section 1(5) (and see also section 1(8)).

#### Commencement Information

**I52** S. 54 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 54 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 54 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 54 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART 2

### LICENSING OF HOUSES IN MULTIPLE OCCUPATION

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C8** Pt. 2 modified (E.) (1.10.2007) by The Houses in [Multiple Occupation \(Certain Blocks of Flats\) \(Modifications to the Housing Act 2004 and Transitional Provisions for section 257 HMOs\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1904\)](#), [regs. 2-10](#)
- C9** Pt. 2 modified (W.) (5.12.2007) by The Houses in [Multiple Occupation \(Certain Blocks of Flats\) \(Modifications to the Housing Act 2004 and Transitional Provisions for section 257 HMOs\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3231\)](#), [regs. 2-10](#)

#### *Introductory*

### 55 Licensing of HMOs to which this Part applies

- (1) This Part provides for HMOs to be licensed by local housing authorities where—
  - (a) they are HMOs to which this Part applies (see subsection (2)), and
  - (b) they are required to be licensed under this Part (see section 61(1)).
- (2) This Part applies to the following HMOs in the case of each local housing authority—
  - (a) any HMO in the authority's district which falls within any prescribed description of HMO, and
  - (b) if an area is for the time being designated by the authority under section 56 as subject to additional licensing, any HMO in that area which falls within any description of HMO specified in the designation.
- (3) The appropriate national authority may by order prescribe descriptions of HMOs for the purposes of subsection (2)(a).
- (4) The power conferred by subsection (3) may be exercised in such a way that this Part applies to all HMOs in the district of a local housing authority.
- (5) Every local housing authority have the following general duties—
  - (a) to make such arrangements as are necessary to secure the effective implementation in their district of the licensing regime provided for by this Part;
  - (b) to ensure that all applications for licences and other issues falling to be determined by them under this Part are determined within a reasonable time; and
  - (c) to satisfy themselves, as soon as is reasonably practicable, that there are no Part 1 functions that ought to be exercised by them in relation to the premises in respect of which such applications are made.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5)(c)—
  - (a) “Part 1 function” means any duty under section 5 to take any course of action to which that section applies or any power to take any course of action to which section 7 applies; and
  - (b) the authority may take such steps as they consider appropriate (whether or not involving an inspection) to comply with their duty under subsection (5)(c) in

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

relation to each of the premises in question, but they must in any event comply with it within the period of 5 years beginning with the date of the application for a licence.

#### Commencement Information

**I53** S. 55 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 55 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 55(1)(2)(5)(a)(b) in force for E. at 15.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), [art. 3\(a\)](#); s. 55(1)(2)(5)(a)(b) in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by [S.I. 2005/3237](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#); s. 55 in force for E. in so far as not already in force at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#); s. 55 in force for W. in so far as not already in force at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

### *Designation of additional licensing areas*

#### **56 Designation of areas subject to additional licensing**

- (1) A local housing authority may designate either—
  - (a) the area of their district, or
  - (b) an area in their district,
 as subject to additional licensing in relation to a description of HMOs specified in the designation, if the requirements of this section are met.
- (2) The authority must consider that a significant proportion of the HMOs of that description in the area are being managed sufficiently ineffectively as to give rise, or to be likely to give rise, to one or more particular problems either for those occupying the HMOs or for members of the public.
- (3) Before making a designation the authority must—
  - (a) take reasonable steps to consult persons who are likely to be affected by the designation; and
  - (b) consider any representations made in accordance with the consultation and not withdrawn.
- (4) The power to make a designation under this section may be exercised in such a way that this Part applies to all HMOs in the area in question.
- (5) In forming an opinion as to the matter mentioned in subsection (2), the authority must have regard to any information regarding the extent to which any codes of practice approved under section 233 have been complied with by persons managing HMOs in the area in question.
- (6) Section 57 applies for the purposes of this section.

#### Commencement Information

**I54** S. 56 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 56 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 56 in force for E. at 15.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), [art. 3\(b\)](#); s. 56 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by [S.I. 2005/3237](#), [art. 2\(c\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 57 Designations under section 56: further considerations

- (1) This section applies to the power of a local housing authority to make designations under section 56.
- (2) The authority must ensure that any exercise of the power is consistent with the authority's overall housing strategy.
- (3) The authority must also seek to adopt a co-ordinated approach in connection with dealing with homelessness, empty properties and anti-social behaviour affecting the private rented sector, both—
  - (a) as regards combining licensing under this Part with other courses of action available to them, and
  - (b) as regards combining such licensing with measures taken by other persons.
- (4) The authority must not make a particular designation under section 56 unless—
  - (a) they have considered whether there are any other courses of action available to them (of whatever nature) that might provide an effective method of dealing with the problem or problems in question, and
  - (b) they consider that making the designation will significantly assist them to deal with the problem or problems (whether or not they take any other course of action as well).
- (5) In this Act “anti-social behaviour” means conduct on the part of occupiers of, or visitors to, residential premises—
  - (a) which causes or is likely to cause a nuisance or annoyance to persons residing, visiting or otherwise engaged in lawful activities in the vicinity of such premises, or
  - (b) which involves or is likely to involve the use of such premises for illegal purposes.

### Commencement Information

**I55** S. 57 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 57 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 57 in force for E. at 15.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), [art. 3\(b\)](#); s. 57 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by [S.I. 2005/3237](#), [art. 2\(c\)](#)

## 58 Designation needs confirmation or general approval to be effective

- (1) A designation of an area as subject to additional licensing cannot come into force unless—
  - (a) it has been confirmed by the appropriate national authority; or
  - (b) it falls within a description of designations in relation to which that authority has given a general approval in accordance with subsection (6).
- (2) The appropriate national authority may either confirm, or refuse to confirm, a designation as it considers appropriate.
- (3) If the appropriate national authority confirms a designation, the designation comes into force on the date specified for this purpose by that authority.
- (4) That date must be no earlier than three months after the date on which the designation is confirmed.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) A general approval may be given in relation to a description of designations framed by reference to any matters or circumstances.
- (6) Accordingly a general approval may (in particular) be given in relation to—
  - (a) designations made by a specified local housing authority;
  - (b) designations made by a local housing authority falling within a specified description of such authorities;
  - (c) designations relating to HMOs of a specified description.  
 “Specified” means specified by the appropriate national authority in the approval.
- (7) If, by virtue of a general approval, a designation does not need to be confirmed before it comes into force, the designation comes into force on the date specified for this purpose in the designation.
- (8) That date must be no earlier than three months after the date on which the designation is made.

#### Commencement Information

**I56** S. 58 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 58 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 58 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 58 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 59 Notification requirements relating to designations

- (1) This section applies to a designation—
  - (a) when it is confirmed under section 58, or
  - (b) (if it is not required to be so confirmed) when it is made by the local housing authority.
- (2) As soon as the designation is confirmed or made, the authority must publish in the prescribed manner a notice stating—
  - (a) that the designation has been made,
  - (b) whether or not the designation was required to be confirmed and either that it has been confirmed or that a general approval under section 58 applied to it (giving details of the approval in question),
  - (c) the date on which the designation is to come into force, and
  - (d) any other information which may be prescribed.
- (3) After publication of a notice under subsection (2), and for as long as the designation is in force, the local housing authority must make available to the public in accordance with any prescribed requirements—
  - (a) copies of the designation, and
  - (b) such information relating to the designation as is prescribed.
- (4) In this section “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Commencement Information

**I57** S. 59 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 59 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 59 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 59 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

### 60 Duration, review and revocation of designations

- (1) Unless previously revoked under subsection (4), a designation ceases to have effect at the time that is specified for this purpose in the designation.
- (2) That time must be no later than five years after the date on which the designation comes into force.
- (3) A local housing authority must from time to time review the operation of any designation made by them.
- (4) If following a review they consider it appropriate to do so, the authority may revoke the designation.
- (5) If they do revoke the designation, the designation ceases to have effect at the time that is specified by the authority for this purpose.
- (6) On revoking a designation the authority must publish notice of the revocation in such manner as is prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.

#### Commencement Information

**I58** S. 60 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 60 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 60 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 60 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

### *HMOs required to be licensed*

### 61 Requirement for HMOs to be licensed

- (1) Every HMO to which this Part applies must be licensed under this Part unless—
  - (a) a temporary exemption notice is in force in relation to it under section 62, or
  - (b) an interim or final management order is in force in relation to it under Chapter 1 of Part 4.
- (2) A licence under this Part is a licence authorising occupation of the house concerned by not more than a maximum number of households or persons specified in the licence.
- (3) Sections 63 to 67 deal with applications for licences, the granting or refusal of licences and the imposition of licence conditions.
- (4) The local housing authority must take all reasonable steps to secure that applications for licences are made to them in respect of HMOs in their area which are required to be licensed under this Part but are not.
- (5) The appropriate national authority may by regulations provide for—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any provision of this Part, or
  - (b) section 263 (in its operation for the purposes of any such provision),  
to have effect in relation to a section 257 HMO with such modifications as are prescribed by the regulations.  
A “section 257 HMO” is an HMO which is a converted block of flats to which section 257 applies.
- (6) In this Part (unless the context otherwise requires)—
- (a) references to a licence are to a licence under this Part,
  - (b) references to a licence holder are to be read accordingly, and
  - (c) references to an HMO being (or not being) licensed under this Part are to its being (or not being) an HMO in respect of which a licence is in force under this Part.

#### Commencement Information

**I59** S. 61 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 61 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 61 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 61 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 62 Temporary exemption from licensing requirement

- (1) This section applies where a person having control of or managing an HMO which is required to be licensed under this Part (see section 61(1)) but is not so licensed, notifies the local housing authority of his intention to take particular steps with a view to securing that the house is no longer required to be licensed.
- (2) The authority may, if they think fit, serve on that person a notice under this section (“a temporary exemption notice”) in respect of the house.
- (3) If a temporary exemption notice is served under this section, the house is (in accordance with sections 61(1) and 85(1)) not required to be licensed either under this Part or under Part 3 during the period for which the notice is in force.
- (4) A temporary exemption notice under this section is in force—
  - (a) for the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which it is served, or
  - (b) (in the case of a notice served by virtue of subsection (5)) for the period of 3 months after the date when the first notice ceases to be in force.
- (5) If the authority—
  - (a) receive a further notification under subsection (1), and
  - (b) consider that there are exceptional circumstances that justify the service of a second temporary exemption notice in respect of the house that would take effect from the end of the period of 3 months applying to the first notice,
 the authority may serve a second such notice on the person having control of or managing the house (but no further notice may be served by virtue of this subsection).
- (6) If the authority decide not to serve a temporary exemption notice in response to a notification under subsection (1), they must without delay serve on the person concerned a notice informing him of—
  - (a) the decision,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the reasons for it and the date on which it was made,
  - (c) the right to appeal against the decision under subsection (7), and
  - (d) the period within which an appeal may be made under that subsection.
- (7) The person concerned may appeal to [<sup>F9</sup>the appropriate tribunal] against the decision within the period of 28 days beginning with the date specified under subsection (6) as the date on which it was made.
- (8) Such an appeal—
- (a) is to be by way of a re-hearing, but
  - (b) may be determined having regard to matters of which the authority were unaware.
- (9) The tribunal—
- (a) may confirm or reverse the decision of the authority, and
  - (b) if it reverses the decision, must direct the authority to serve a temporary exemption notice that comes into force on such date as the tribunal directs.

#### Textual Amendments

**F9** Words in s. 62(7) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), [art. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 153](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I60** S. 62 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 62 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 62 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 62 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Grant or refusal of licences*

## **63 Applications for licences**

- (1) An application for a licence must be made to the local housing authority.
- (2) The application must be made in accordance with such requirements as the authority may specify.
- (3) The authority may, in particular, require the application to be accompanied by a fee fixed by the authority.
- (4) The power of the authority to specify requirements under this section is subject to any regulations made under subsection (5).
- (5) The appropriate national authority may by regulations make provision about the making of applications under this section.
- (6) Such regulations may, in particular—
  - (a) specify the manner and form in which applications are to be made;
  - (b) require the applicant to give copies of the application, or information about it, to particular persons;
  - (c) specify the information which is to be supplied in connection with applications;

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) specify the maximum fees which are to be charged (whether by specifying amounts or methods for calculating amounts);
  - (e) specify cases in which no fees are to be charged or fees are to be refunded.
- (7) When fixing fees under this section, the local housing authority may (subject to any regulations made under subsection (5)) take into account—
- (a) all costs incurred by the authority in carrying out their functions under this Part, and
  - (b) all costs incurred by them in carrying out their functions under Chapter 1 of Part 4 in relation to HMOs (so far as they are not recoverable under or by virtue of any provision of that Chapter).

#### Commencement Information

**I61** S. 63 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 63 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 63 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 63 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 64 Grant or refusal of licence

- (1) Where an application in respect of an HMO is made to the local housing authority under section 63, the authority must either—
- (a) grant a licence in accordance with subsection (2), or
  - (b) refuse to grant a licence.
- (2) If the authority are satisfied as to the matters mentioned in subsection (3), they may grant a licence either—
- (a) to the applicant, or
  - (b) to some other person, if both he and the applicant agree.
- (3) The matters are—
- (a) that the house is reasonably suitable for occupation by not more than the maximum number of households or persons mentioned in subsection (4) or that it can be made so suitable by the imposition of conditions under section 67;
  - [<sup>F10</sup>(aa) that no banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016 is in force against a person who—
    - (i) owns an estate or interest in the house or part of it, and
    - (ii) is a lessor or licensor of the house or part;]
  - (b) that the proposed licence holder—
    - (i) is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder, and
    - (ii) is, out of all the persons reasonably available to be the licence holder in respect of the house, the most appropriate person to be the licence holder;
  - (c) that the proposed manager of the house is either—
    - (i) the person having control of the house, or
    - (ii) a person who is an agent or employee of the person having control of the house;
  - (d) that the proposed manager of the house is a fit and proper person to be the manager of the house; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (e) that the proposed management arrangements for the house are otherwise satisfactory.
- (4) The maximum number of households or persons referred to in subsection (3)(a) is—
  - (a) the maximum number specified in the application, or
  - (b) some other maximum number decided by the authority.
- (5) Sections 65 and 66 apply for the purposes of this section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F10** S. 64(3)(aa) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 2](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

**I62** S. 64 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 64 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 64 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 64 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 65 Tests as to suitability for multiple occupation

- (1) The local housing authority cannot be satisfied for the purposes of section 64(3)(a) that the house is reasonably suitable for occupation by a particular maximum number of households or persons if they consider that it fails to meet prescribed standards for occupation by that number of households or persons.
- (2) But the authority may decide that the house is not reasonably suitable for occupation by a particular maximum number of households or persons even if it does meet prescribed standards for occupation by that number of households or persons.
- (3) In this section “prescribed standards” means standards prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.
- (4) The standards that may be so prescribed include—
  - (a) standards as to the number, type and quality of—
    - (i) bathrooms, toilets, washbasins and showers,
    - (ii) areas for food storage, preparation and cooking, and
    - (iii) laundry facilities,which should be available in particular circumstances; and
  - (b) standards as to the number, type and quality of other facilities or equipment which should be available in particular circumstances.

#### Commencement Information

**I63** S. 65 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 65 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 65 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 65 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **66 Tests for fitness etc. and satisfactory management arrangements**

- (1) In deciding for the purposes of section 64(3)(b) or (d) whether a person (“P”) is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder or (as the case may be) the manager of the house, the local housing authority must have regard (among other things) to any evidence within subsection (2) or (3).
  - (2) Evidence is within this subsection if it shows that P has—
    - (a) committed any offence involving fraud or other dishonesty, or violence or drugs, or any offence listed in Schedule 3 to the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (c. 42) (offences attracting notification requirements);
    - (b) practised unlawful discrimination on grounds of sex, colour, race, ethnic or national origins or disability in, or in connection with, the carrying on of any business;
    - (c) contravened any provision of the law relating to housing or of landlord and tenant law; or
    - (d) acted otherwise than in accordance with any applicable code of practice approved under section 233.
  - (3) Evidence is within this subsection if—
    - (a) it shows that any person associated or formerly associated with P (whether on a personal, work or other basis) has done any of the things set out in subsection (2)(a) to (d), and
    - (b) it appears to the authority that the evidence is relevant to the question whether P is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder or (as the case may be) the manager of the house.
- [<sup>F11</sup>(3C) A person is not a fit and proper person for the purposes of section 64(3)(b) or (d) if a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016 is in force against the person.]
- (4) For the purposes of section 64(3)(b) the local housing authority must assume, unless the contrary is shown, that the person having control of the house is a more appropriate person to be the licence holder than a person not having control of it.
  - (5) In deciding for the purposes of section 64(3)(e) whether the proposed management arrangements for the house are otherwise satisfactory, the local housing authority must have regard (among other things) to the considerations mentioned in subsection (6).
  - (6) The considerations are—
    - (a) whether any person proposed to be involved in the management of the house has a sufficient level of competence to be so involved;
    - (b) whether any person proposed to be involved in the management of the house (other than the manager) is a fit and proper person to be so involved; and
    - (c) whether any proposed management structures and funding arrangements are suitable.
  - (7) Any reference in section 64(3)(c)(i) or (ii) or subsection (4) above to a person having control of the house, or to being a person of any other description, includes a reference to a person who is proposing to have control of the house, or (as the case may be) to be a person of that description, at the time when the licence would come into force.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F11** S. 66(3C) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 3](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

### Commencement Information

**I64** S. 66 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 66 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 66 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 66 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 67 Licence conditions

- (1) A licence may include such conditions as the local housing authority consider appropriate for regulating all or any of the following—
  - (a) the management, use and occupation of the house concerned, and
  - (b) its condition and contents.
- (2) Those conditions may, in particular, include (so far as appropriate in the circumstances)—
  - (a) conditions imposing restrictions or prohibitions on the use or occupation of particular parts of the house by persons occupying it;
  - (b) conditions requiring the taking of reasonable and practicable steps to prevent or reduce anti-social behaviour by persons occupying or visiting the house;
  - (c) conditions requiring facilities and equipment to be made available in the house for the purpose of meeting standards prescribed under section 65;
  - (d) conditions requiring such facilities and equipment to be kept in repair and proper working order;
  - (e) conditions requiring, in the case of any works needed in order for any such facilities or equipment to be made available or to meet any such standards, that the works are carried out within such period or periods as may be specified in, or determined under, the licence;
  - (f) conditions requiring the licence holder or the manager of the house to attend training courses in relation to any applicable code of practice approved under section 233.
- (3) A licence must include the conditions required by Schedule 4.
- (4) As regards the relationship between the authority’s power to impose conditions under this section and functions exercisable by them under or for the purposes of Part 1 (“Part 1 functions”)—
  - (a) the authority must proceed on the basis that, in general, they should seek to identify, remove or reduce category 1 or category 2 hazards in the house by the exercise of Part 1 functions and not by means of licence conditions;
  - (b) this does not, however, prevent the authority from imposing licence conditions relating to the installation or maintenance of facilities or equipment within subsection (2)(c) above, even if the same result could be achieved by the exercise of Part 1 functions;
  - (c) the fact that licence conditions are imposed for a particular purpose that could be achieved by the exercise of Part 1 functions does not affect the way in which Part 1 functions can be subsequently exercised by the authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) A licence may not include conditions imposing restrictions or obligations on a particular person other than the licence holder unless that person has consented to the imposition of the restrictions or obligations.
- (6) A licence may not include conditions requiring (or intended to secure) any alteration in the terms of any tenancy or licence under which any person occupies the house.

#### Commencement Information

**I65** S. 67 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 67 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 67 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 67 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 68 Licences: general requirements and duration

- (1) A licence may not relate to more than one HMO.
- (2) A licence may be granted before the time when it is required by virtue of this Part but, if so, the licence cannot come into force until that time.
- (3) A licence—
  - (a) comes into force at the time that is specified in or determined under the licence for this purpose, and
  - (b) unless previously terminated by subsection (7) or revoked under section 70 [<sup>F12</sup>or 70A], continues in force for the period that is so specified or determined.
- (4) That period must not end more than 5 years after—
  - (a) the date on which the licence was granted, or
  - (b) if the licence was granted as mentioned in subsection (2), the date when the licence comes into force.
- (5) Subsection (3)(b) applies even if, at any time during that period, the HMO concerned subsequently ceases to be one to which this Part applies.
- (6) A licence may not be transferred to another person.
- (7) If the holder of the licence dies while the licence is in force, the licence ceases to be in force on his death.
- (8) However, during the period of 3 months beginning with the date of the licence holder's death, the house is to be treated for the purposes of this Part and Part 3 as if on that date a temporary exemption notice had been served in respect of the house under section 62.
- (9) If, at any time during that period (“the initial period”), the personal representatives of the licence holder request the local housing authority to do so, the authority may serve on them a notice which, during the period of 3 months after the date on which the initial period ends, has the same effect as a temporary exemption notice under section 62.
- (10) Subsections (6) to (8) of section 62 apply (with any necessary modifications) in relation to a decision by the authority not to serve such a notice as they apply in relation to a decision not to serve a temporary exemption notice.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

- F12** Words in s. 68(3)(b) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 4](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

### Commencement Information

- I66** S. 68 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 68 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 68 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 68 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## Variation and revocation of licences

### 69 Variation of licences

- (1) The local housing authority may vary a licence—
- if they do so with the agreement of the licence holder, or
  - if they consider that there has been a change of circumstances since the time when the licence was granted.

For this purpose “change of circumstances” includes any discovery of new information.

- (2) Subsection (3) applies where the authority—
- are considering whether to vary a licence under subsection (1)(b); and
  - are considering—
    - what number of households or persons is appropriate as the maximum number authorised to occupy the HMO to which the licence relates, or
    - the standards applicable to occupation by a particular number of households or persons.
- (3) The authority must apply the same standards in relation to the circumstances existing at the time when they are considering whether to vary the licence as were applicable at the time when it was granted.

This is subject to subsection (4).

- (4) If the standards—
- prescribed under section 65, and
  - applicable at the time when the licence was granted,
- have subsequently been revised or superseded by provisions of regulations under that section, the authority may apply the new standards.
- (5) A variation made with the agreement of the licence holder takes effect at the time when it is made.
- (6) Otherwise, a variation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 35 of Schedule 5 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).
- (7) The power to vary a licence under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
- on an application made by the licence holder or a relevant person, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) on the authority’s own initiative.
- (8) In subsection (7) “relevant person” means any person (other than the licence holder)—
- (a) who has an estate or interest in the HMO concerned (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or
  - (b) who is a person managing or having control of the house (and does not fall within paragraph (a)), or
  - (c) on whom any restriction or obligation is imposed by the licence in accordance with section 67(5).

#### Commencement Information

**I67** S. 69 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 69 in force at Royal Assent for certain purposes see s. 270(2) (b); s. 69 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 69 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 70 [F13 Power to revoke licences]

- (1) The local housing authority may revoke a licence—
- (a) if they do so with the agreement of the licence holder;
  - (b) in any of the cases mentioned in subsection (2) (circumstances relating to licence holder or other person);
  - (c) in any of the cases mentioned in subsection (3) (circumstances relating to HMO concerned); or
  - (d) in any other circumstances prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.
- (2) The cases referred to in subsection (1)(b) are as follows—
- (a) where the authority consider that the licence holder or any other person has committed a serious breach of a condition of the licence or repeated breaches of such a condition;
  - (b) where the authority no longer consider that the licence holder is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder; and
  - (c) where the authority no longer consider that the management of the house is being carried on by persons who are in each case fit and proper persons to be involved in its management.

Section 66(1) applies in relation to paragraph (b) or (c) above as it applies in relation to section 64(3)(b) or (d).

- (3) The cases referred to in subsection (1)(c) are as follows—
- (a) where the HMO to which the licence relates ceases to be an HMO to which this Part applies; and
  - (b) where the authority consider at any time that, were the licence to expire at that time, they would, for a particular reason relating to the structure of the HMO, refuse to grant a new licence to the licence holder on similar terms in respect of it.
- (4) Subsection (5) applies where the authority are considering whether to revoke a licence by virtue of subsection (3)(b) on the grounds that the HMO is not reasonably suitable

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

for the number of households or persons specified in the licence as the maximum number authorised to occupy the house.

- (5) The authority must apply the same standards in relation to the circumstances existing at the time when they are considering whether to revoke the licence as were applicable at the time when it was granted.

This is subject to subsection (6).

- (6) If the standards—
- (a) prescribed under section 65, and
  - (b) applicable at the time when the licence was granted,
- have subsequently been revised or superseded by provisions of regulations under that section, the authority may apply the new standards.
- (7) A revocation made with the agreement of the licence holder takes effect at the time when it is made.
- (8) Otherwise, a revocation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 35 of Schedule 5 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).
- (9) The power to revoke a licence under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
- (a) on an application made by the licence holder or a relevant person, or
  - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.
- (10) In subsection (9) “relevant person” means any person (other than the licence holder)—
- (a) who has an estate or interest in the HMO concerned (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or
  - (b) who is a person managing or having control of that house (and does not fall within paragraph (a)), or
  - (c) on whom any restriction or obligation is imposed by the licence in accordance with section 67(5).

#### Textual Amendments

**F13** S. 70 heading substituted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 5](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

**I68** S. 70 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 70 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 70 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 70 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### [<sup>F14</sup>70A Duty to revoke licence in banning order cases

- (1) The local housing authority must revoke a licence if a banning order is made against the licence holder.
- (2) The local housing authority must revoke a licence if a banning order is made against a person who—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) owns an estate or interest in the house or part of it, and
  - (b) is a lessor or licensor of the house or part.
- (3) The notice served by the local housing authority under paragraph 24 of Schedule 5 must specify when the revocation takes effect.
- (4) The revocation must not take effect earlier than the end of the period of 7 days beginning with the day on which the notice is served.
- (5) In this section “banning order” means a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F14** S. 70A inserted (6.4.2018) by Housing and Planning Act 2016 (c. 22), s. 216(3), Sch. 2 para. 6; S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)

### *Procedure and appeals*

## 71 Procedural requirements and appeals against licence decisions

Schedule 5 (which deals with procedural requirements relating to the grant, refusal, variation or revocation of licences and with appeals against licence decisions) has effect for the purposes of this Part.

#### Commencement Information

**I69** S. 71 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 71 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 71 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 71 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### *Enforcement*

## 72 Offences in relation to licensing of HMOs

- (1) A person commits an offence if he is a person having control of or managing an HMO which is required to be licensed under this Part (see section 61(1)) but is not so licensed.
- (2) A person commits an offence if—
- (a) he is a person having control of or managing an HMO which is licensed under this Part,
  - (b) he knowingly permits another person to occupy the house, and
  - (c) the other person’s occupation results in the house being occupied by more households or persons than is authorised by the licence.
- (3) A person commits an offence if—
- (a) he is a licence holder or a person on whom restrictions or obligations under a licence are imposed in accordance with section 67(5), and
  - (b) he fails to comply with any condition of the licence.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1) it is a defence that, at the material time—
- a notification had been duly given in respect of the house under section 62(1), or
  - an application for a licence had been duly made in respect of the house under section 63,
- and that notification or application was still effective (see subsection (8)).
- (5) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1), (2) or (3) it is a defence that he had a reasonable excuse—
- for having control of or managing the house in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1), or
  - for permitting the person to occupy the house, or
  - for failing to comply with the condition,
- as the case may be.
- (6) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) or (2) is liable on summary conviction to [<sup>F15</sup>a fine] .
- (7) A person who commits an offence under subsection (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- [<sup>F16</sup>(7A) See also section 249A (financial penalties as alternative to prosecution for certain housing offences in England).
- (7B) If a local housing authority has imposed a financial penalty on a person under section 249A in respect of conduct amounting to an offence under this section the person may not be convicted of an offence under this section in respect of the conduct.]
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (4) a notification or application is “effective” at a particular time if at that time it has not been withdrawn, and either—
- the authority have not decided whether to serve a temporary exemption notice, or (as the case may be) grant a licence, in pursuance of the notification or application, or
  - if they have decided not to do so, one of the conditions set out in subsection (9) is met.
- (9) The conditions are—
- that the period for appealing against the decision of the authority not to serve or grant such a notice or licence (or against any relevant decision of [<sup>F17</sup>the appropriate tribunal]) has not expired, or
  - that an appeal has been brought against the authority’s decision (or against any relevant decision of such a tribunal) and the appeal has not been determined or withdrawn.
- (10) In subsection (9) “relevant decision” means a decision which is given on an appeal to the tribunal and confirms the authority’s decision (with or without variation).

#### Textual Amendments

**F15** Words in s. 72(6) substituted (12.3.2015) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Fines on Summary Conviction\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/664\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 4 para. 37(2)** (with reg. 5(1))

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F16** S. 72(7A)(7B) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), **Sch. 9 para. 3**; [S.I. 2017/281](#), reg. 4(f)
- F17** Words in s. 72(9)(a) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 154** (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I70** S. 72 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 72 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 72(2)(3)(5)(6)(7) in force for E. at 6.4.2006 and s. 72 in force for E. in so far as not already in force at 6.7.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(b)(2)(b)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 72 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

### 73 Other consequences of operating unlicensed HMOs: rent repayment orders

- (1) For the purposes of this section an HMO is an “unlicensed HMO” if—
  - (a) it is required to be licensed under this Part but is not so licensed, and
  - (b) neither of the conditions in subsection (2) is satisfied.
- (2) The conditions are—
  - (a) that a notification has been duly given in respect of the HMO under section 62(1) and that notification is still effective (as defined by section 72(8));
  - (b) that an application for a licence has been duly made in respect of the HMO under section 63 and that application is still effective (as so defined).
- (3) No rule of law relating to the validity or enforceability of contracts in circumstances involving illegality is to affect the validity or enforceability of—
  - (a) any provision requiring the payment of rent or the making of any other periodical payment in connection with any tenancy or licence of a part of an unlicensed HMO, or
  - (b) any other provision of such a tenancy or licence.
- (4) But amounts paid in respect of rent or other periodical payments payable in connection with such a tenancy or licence may be recovered in accordance with subsection (5) and section 74 [<sup>F18</sup>(in the case of an HMO in Wales) or in accordance with Chapter 4 of Part 2 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016 (in the case of an HMO in England)] .
- (5) If—
  - (a) an application in respect of an HMO is made to [<sup>F19</sup>the appropriate tribunal] by the local housing authority or an occupier of a part of the HMO [<sup>F20</sup>in Wales] , and
  - (b) the tribunal is satisfied as to the matters mentioned in subsection (6) or (8), the tribunal may make an order (a “rent repayment order”) requiring the appropriate person to pay to the applicant such amount in respect of the [<sup>F21</sup>relevant award or awards of universal credit or the] housing benefit paid as mentioned in subsection (6) (b), or (as the case may be) the periodical payments paid as mentioned in subsection (8) (b), as is specified in the order (see section 74(2) to (8)).
- (6) If the application is made by the local housing authority, the tribunal must be satisfied as to the following matters—
  - (a) that, at any time within the period of 12 months ending with the date of the notice of intended proceedings required by subsection (7), the appropriate

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

person has committed an offence under section 72(1) in relation to the HMO (whether or not he has been charged or convicted),

[<sup>F22</sup>(b) that—

- (i) one or more relevant awards of universal credit have been paid (to any person); or
- (ii) housing benefit has been paid (to any person) in respect of periodical payments payable in connection with the occupation of a part or parts of the HMO ,

during any period during which it appears to the tribunal that such an offence was being committed,]

- (c) that the requirements of subsection (7) have been complied with in relation to the application.

[<sup>F23</sup>(6A) In subsection (6)(b)(i), “relevant award of universal credit” means an award of universal credit the calculation of which included an amount under section 11 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012, calculated in accordance with Schedule 4 to the Universal Credit Regulations 2013 (housing costs element for renters) ( [S.I. 2013/376](#) ) or any corresponding provision replacing that Schedule, in respect of periodical payments payable in connection with the occupation of a part or parts of the HMO. ]

(7) Those requirements are as follows—

- (a) the authority must have served on the appropriate person a notice (a “notice of intended proceedings”)—
  - (i) informing him that the authority are proposing to make an application under subsection (5),
  - (ii) setting out the reasons why they propose to do so,
  - (iii) stating the amount that they will seek to recover under that subsection and how that amount is calculated, and
  - (iv) inviting him to make representations to them within a period specified in the notice of not less than 28 days;
- (b) that period must have expired; and
- (c) the authority must have considered any representations made to them within that period by the appropriate person.

(8) If the application is made by an occupier of a part of the HMO, the tribunal must be satisfied as to the following matters—

- (a) that the appropriate person has been convicted of an offence under section 72(1) in relation to the HMO, or has been required by a rent repayment order to make a payment in respect of
  - (i)

#### Textual Amendments

- F18** Words in s. 73(4) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 50(2)(a)**, 216(3); [S.I. 2017/281](#), **reg. 4(c)**
- F19** Words in s. 73(5)(a) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), **art. 1**, **Sch. 1 para. 155** (with [Sch. 3](#))
- F20** Words in s. 73(5)(a) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 50(2)(b)**, 216(3); [S.I. 2017/281](#), **reg. 4(c)**
- F21** Words in s. 73(5) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2)**, **18(2)(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- and words in s. 73(5) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(a)**
- F22** S. 73(6)(b) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), 18(2)(b) and s. 73(6)(b) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(b)**
- F23** S. 73(6A) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(2)(c)** and S. 73(6A) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(c)**
- F24** Words in s. 73(8)(a) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(2)(d)** and words in s. 73(8)(a) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(d)**
- F25** Words in s. 73(10) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(2)(e)(i)** and words in s. 73(10) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(e)(i)**
- F26** Words in s. 73(10) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(2)(e)(ii)** and words in s. 73(10) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(e)(ii)**
- F27** Words in s. 73(11)(b) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(2)(f)** and words in s. 73(11)(b) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(2)(f)**

#### Commencement Information

- I71** S. 73 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 73 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 73 in force for E. at 6.7.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(2)(a)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 73 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

## 74 Further provisions about rent repayment orders

- (1) This section applies in relation to rent repayment orders made by residential property tribunals under section 73(5).
- (2) Where, on an application by the local housing authority, the tribunal is satisfied—
  - (a) that a person has been convicted of an offence under section 72(1) in relation to the HMO, and
  - <sup>F28</sup>(b) that—
    - (i) one or more relevant awards of universal credit (as defined in section 73(6A)) were paid (whether or not to the appropriate person), or
    - (ii) housing benefit was paid (whether or not to the appropriate person) in respect of periodical payments payable in connection with occupation of a part or parts of the HMO ,



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

during any period during which it appears to the tribunal that such an offence was being committed in relation to the HMO in question, ]

the tribunal must make a rent repayment order requiring the appropriate person to pay to the authority [<sup>F29</sup>the amount mentioned in subsection (2A)].

This is subject to subsections (3), (4) and (8).

[<sup>F30</sup>(2A) The amount referred to in subsection (2) is—

- (a) an amount equal to—
  - (i) where one relevant award of universal credit was paid as mentioned in subsection (2)(b)(i), the amount included in the calculation of that award under section 11 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012, calculated in accordance with Schedule 4 to the Universal Credit Regulations 2013 (housing costs element for renters) ( [S.I. 2013/376](#) ) or any corresponding provision replacing that Schedule, or the amount of the award if less; or
  - (ii) if more than one such award was paid as mentioned in subsection (2)(b)(i), the sum of the amounts included in the calculation of those awards as referred to in sub-paragraph (i), or the sum of the amounts of those awards if less, or
- (b) an amount equal to the total amount of housing benefit paid as mentioned in subsection (2)(b)(ii),

(as the case may be).]

- (3) If the total of the amounts received by the appropriate person in respect of periodical payments payable as mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (2) (“the rent total”) is less than the [<sup>F31</sup> amount mentioned in subsection (2A)], the amount required to be paid by virtue of a rent repayment order made in accordance with that subsection is limited to the rent total.
- (4) A rent repayment order made in accordance with subsection (2) may not require the payment of any amount which the tribunal is satisfied that, by reason of any exceptional circumstances, it would be unreasonable for that person to be required to pay.
- (5) In a case where subsection (2) does not apply, the amount required to be paid by virtue of a rent repayment order under section 73(5) is to be such amount as the tribunal considers reasonable in the circumstances.

This is subject to subsections (6) to (8).

- (6) In such a case the tribunal must, in particular, take into account the following matters—
  - (a) the total amount of relevant payments paid in connection with occupation of the HMO during any period during which it appears to the tribunal that an offence was being committed by the appropriate person in relation to the HMO under section 72(1);
  - (b) the extent to which that total amount—
    - (i) consisted of, or derived from, payments of [<sup>F32</sup>relevant awards of universal credit or]housing benefit, and
    - (ii) was actually received by the appropriate person;
  - (c) whether the appropriate person has at any time been convicted of an offence under section 72(1) in relation to the HMO;
  - (d) the conduct and financial circumstances of the appropriate person; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (e) where the application is made by an occupier, the conduct of the occupier.
- (7) In subsection (6) “relevant payments” means—
- (a) in relation to an application by a local housing authority, payments of [<sup>F33</sup>relevant awards of universal credit,] housing benefit or periodical payments payable by occupiers;
  - (b) in relation to an application by an occupier, periodical payments payable by the occupier, less
    - (i)
- [<sup>F34</sup>(8) A rent repayment order may not require the payment of any amount which—
- (a) (where the application is made by a local housing authority) is in respect of any time falling outside the period of 12 months mentioned in section 73(6)(a); or
  - (b) (where the application is made by an occupier) is in respect of any time falling outside the period of 12 months ending with the date of the occupier’s application under section 73(5);
- and the period to be taken into account under subsection (6)(a) above is restricted accordingly.
- (9) Any amount payable to a local housing authority under a rent repayment order—
- (a) does not, when recovered by the authority, constitute an amount of [<sup>F35</sup>universal credit or] housing benefit recovered by them, and
  - (b) until recovered by them, is a legal charge on the HMO which is a local land charge.
- (10) For the purpose of enforcing that charge the authority have the same powers and remedies under the Law of Property Act 1925 (c. 20) and otherwise as if they were mortgagees by deed having powers of sale and lease, and of accepting surrenders of leases and of appointing a receiver.
- (11) The power of appointing a receiver is exercisable at any time after the end of the period of one month beginning with the date on which the charge takes effect.
- (12) If the authority subsequently grant a licence under this Part or Part 3 in respect of the HMO to the appropriate person or any person acting on his behalf, the conditions contained in the licence may include a condition requiring the licence holder—
- (a) to pay to the authority any amount payable to them under the rent repayment order and not so far recovered by them; and
  - (b) to do so in such instalments as are specified in the licence.
- (13) If the authority subsequently make a management order under Chapter 1 of Part 4 in respect of the HMO, the order may contain such provisions as the authority consider appropriate for the recovery of any amount payable to them under the rent repayment order and not so far recovered by them.
- (14) Any amount payable to an occupier by virtue of a rent repayment order is recoverable by the occupier as a debt due to him from the appropriate person.
- (15) The appropriate national authority may by regulations make such provision as it considers appropriate for supplementing the provisions of this section and section 73, and in particular—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) for securing that persons are not unfairly prejudiced by rent repayment orders (whether in cases where there have been over-payments of [<sup>F36</sup>universal credit or] housing benefit or otherwise);
- (b) for requiring or authorising amounts received by local housing authorities by virtue of rent repayment orders to be dealt with in such manner as is specified in the regulations.

(16) Section 73(10) and (11) apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of section 73.]

### Textual Amendments

- F28** S. 74(2)(b) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(a)(i)** and S. 74(2)(b) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(a)(i)**
- F29** Words in s. 74(2) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(a)(ii)** and words in s. 74(2) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(a)(ii)**
- F30** S. 74(2A) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(b)** and S. 74(2A) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(b)**
- F31** Words in s. 74(3) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(c)** and words in s. 74(3) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(c)**
- F32** Words in s. 74(6)(b)(i) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(d)** and words in s. 74(6)(b)(i) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(d)**
- F33** Words in s. 74(7)(a) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(e)(i)** and words in s. 74(7)(a) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(e)(i)**
- F34** Words in s. 74(7)(b) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(e)(ii)** and words in s. 74(7)(b) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(e)(ii)**
- F35** Words in s. 74(9)(a) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(f)** and words in s. 74(9)(a) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(f)**
- F36** Words in s. 74(15)(a) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), **18(3)(f)** and words in s. 74(15)(a) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), **3(3)(f)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Commencement Information**

**I72** S. 74 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 74 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 74 in force for E. at 6.7.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 74 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### **75 Other consequences of operating unlicensed HMOs: restriction on terminating tenancies**

- (1) No section 21 notice may be given in relation to a shorthold tenancy of a part of an unlicensed HMO so long as it remains such an HMO.
- (2) In this section—
  - a “section 21 notice” means a notice under section 21(1)(b) or (4)(a) of the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50) (recovery of possession on termination of shorthold tenancy);
  - a “shorthold tenancy” means an assured shorthold tenancy within the meaning of Chapter 2 of Part 1 of that Act;
  - “unlicensed HMO” has the same meaning as in section 73 of this Act.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I73** S. 75 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 75 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 75 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 75 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### *Supplementary provisions*

#### **76 Transitional arrangements relating to introduction and termination of licensing**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where—
  - (a) an order under section 55(3) which prescribes a particular description of HMOs comes into force; or
  - (b) a designation under section 56 comes into force in relation to HMOs of a particular description.
- (2) This Part applies in relation to the occupation by persons or households of such HMOs on or after the coming into force of the order or designation even if their occupation began before, or in pursuance of a contract made before, it came into force.  
 This is subject to subsections (3) to (5).
- (3) Subsection (4) applies where—
  - (a) an HMO which is licensed under this Part, or a part of such an HMO, is occupied by more households or persons than the number permitted by the licence; and
  - (b) the occupation of all or any of those households or persons began before, or in pursuance of a contract made before, the licence came into force.
- (4) In proceedings against a person for an offence under section 72(2) it is a defence that at the material time he was taking all reasonable steps to try to reduce the number of households or persons occupying the house to the number permitted by the licence.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Subsection (4) does not apply if the licence came into force immediately after a previous licence in respect of the same HMO unless the occupation in question began before, or in pursuance of a contract made before, the coming into force of the original licence.
- (6) An order under section 270 may make provision as regards the licensing under this Part of HMOs—
- (a) which are registered immediately before the appointed day under a scheme to which section 347 (schemes containing control provisions) or 348B (schemes containing special control provisions) of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) applies, or
  - (b) in respect of which applications for registration under such a scheme are then pending.
- (7) In subsection (6) “the appointed day” means the day appointed for the coming into force of section 61.

#### Commencement Information

**I74** S. 76 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 76 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 76 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 76 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### 77 Meaning of “HMO”

In this Part—

- (a) “HMO” means a house in multiple occupation as defined by sections 254 to 259, and
- (b) references to an HMO include (where the context permits) any yard, garden, outhouses and appurtenances belonging to, or usually enjoyed with, it (or any part of it).

#### Commencement Information

**I75** S. 77 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 77 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 77 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 77 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### 78 Index of defined expressions: Part 2

The following table shows where expressions used in this Part are defined or otherwise explained.

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Provision of this Act</i>
Anti-social behaviour	Section 57(5)
Appropriate national authority	Section 261(1)
Category 1 hazard	Section 2(1)
Category 2 hazard	Section 2(1)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

District of local housing authority	Section 261(6)
HMO	Section 77
HMO to which this Part applies	Section 55(2)
Licence and licence holder	Section 61(6)
Licence (to occupy premises)	Section 262(9)
Local housing authority	Section 261(2) to (5)
Modifications	Section 250(7)
Occupier (and related expressions)	Section 262(6)
Person having control	Section 263(1) and (2) (and see also section 66(7))
Person having estate or interest	Section 262(8)
Person managing	Section 263(3)
Person involved in management	Section 263(5)
Residential property tribunal	Section 229
Tenant	Section 262(1) to (5).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I76** S. 78 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 78 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 78 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 78 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## **PART 3**

### SELECTIVE LICENSING OF OTHER RESIDENTIAL ACCOMMODATION

#### *Introductory*

#### **79 Licensing of houses to which this Part applies**

- (1) This Part provides for houses to be licensed by local housing authorities where—
  - (a) they are houses to which this Part applies (see subsection (2)), and
  - (b) they are required to be licensed under this Part (see section 85(1)).
- (2) This Part applies to a house if—
  - (a) it is in an area that is for the time being designated under section 80 as subject to selective licensing, and
  - (b) the whole of it is occupied either—
    - (i) under a single tenancy or licence that is not an exempt tenancy or licence under subsection (3) or (4), or
    - (ii) under two or more tenancies or licences in respect of different dwellings contained in it, none of which is an exempt tenancy or licence under subsection (3) or (4).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) A tenancy or licence is an exempt tenancy or licence if<sup>F37</sup>—
- (a) it is granted by a non-profit registered provider of social housing,
  - (b) it is granted by a profit-making registered provider of social housing in respect of social housing (within the meaning of Part 2 of the Housing and Regeneration Act 2008), or
  - (c) it is granted by a body which is registered as a social landlord under Part 1 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52).
- (4) In addition, the appropriate national authority may by order provide for a tenancy or licence to be an exempt tenancy or licence—
- (a) if it falls within any description of tenancy or licence specified in the order; or
  - (b) in any other circumstances so specified.
- (5) Every local housing authority have the following general duties—
- (a) to make such arrangements as are necessary to secure the effective implementation in their district of the licensing regime provided for by this Part; and
  - (b) to ensure that all applications for licences and other issues falling to be determined by them under this Part are determined within a reasonable time.

#### Textual Amendments

**F37** Words in s. 79(3) inserted (1.4.2010) by [The Housing and Regeneration Act 2008 \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/866\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 131** (with art. 6, Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

**I77** S. 79 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 79 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 79 in force for E. at 15.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), **art. 3(c)**; s. 79 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by [S.I. 2005/3237](#), **art. 2(d)**

### *Designation of selective licensing areas*

## **80 Designation of selective licensing areas**

- (1) A local housing authority may designate either—
- (a) the area of their district, or
  - (b) an area in their district,
- as subject to selective licensing, if the requirements of subsections (2) and (9) are met.
- (2) The authority must consider that—
- (a) the first or second set of general conditions mentioned in subsection (3) or (6), or
  - (b) any conditions specified in an order under subsection (7) as an additional set of conditions,
- are satisfied in relation to the area.
- (3) The first set of general conditions are—
- (a) that the area is, or is likely to become, an area of low housing demand; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) that making a designation will, when combined with other measures taken in the area by the local housing authority, or by other persons together with the local housing authority, contribute to the improvement of the social or economic conditions in the area.
- (4) In deciding whether an area is, or is likely to become, an area of low housing demand a local housing authority must take into account (among other matters)—
- (a) the value of residential premises in the area, in comparison to the value of similar premises in other areas which the authority consider to be comparable (whether in terms of types of housing, local amenities, availability of transport or otherwise);
  - (b) the turnover of occupiers of residential premises;
  - (c) the number of residential premises which are available to buy or rent and the length of time for which they remain unoccupied.
- (5) The appropriate national authority may by order amend subsection (4) by adding new matters to those for the time being mentioned in that subsection.
- (6) The second set of general conditions are—
- (a) that the area is experiencing a significant and persistent problem caused by anti-social behaviour;
  - (b) that some or all of the private sector landlords who have let premises in the area (whether under leases or licences) are failing to take action to combat the problem that it would be appropriate for them to take; and
  - (c) that making a designation will, when combined with other measures taken in the area by the local housing authority, or by other persons together with the local housing authority, lead to a reduction in, or the elimination of, the problem.
- “Private sector landlord” does not include [<sup>F38</sup>a non-profit registered provider of social housing or] a registered social landlord within the meaning of Part 1 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52).
- (7) The appropriate national authority may by order provide for any conditions specified in the order to apply as an additional set of conditions for the purposes of subsection (2).
- (8) The conditions that may be specified include, in particular, conditions intended to permit a local housing authority to make a designation for the purpose of dealing with one or more specified problems affecting persons occupying Part 3 houses in the area.
- “Specified” means specified in an order under subsection (7).
- (9) Before making a designation the local housing authority must—
- (a) take reasonable steps to consult persons who are likely to be affected by the designation; and
  - (b) consider any representations made in accordance with the consultation and not withdrawn.
- (10) Section 81 applies for the purposes of this section.

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F38** Words in s. 80(6) inserted (1.4.2010) by [The Housing and Regeneration Act 2008 \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/866\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 132](#) (with art. 6, Sch. 3)



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Commencement Information

- I78** S. 80 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 80 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 80 in force for E. at 15.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), [art. 3\(c\)](#); s. 80 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by [S.I. 2005/3237](#), [art. 2\(d\)](#)

### 81 Designations under section 80: further considerations

- (1) This section applies to the power of a local housing authority to make designations under section 80.
- (2) The authority must ensure that any exercise of the power is consistent with the authority's overall housing strategy.
- (3) The authority must also seek to adopt a co-ordinated approach in connection with dealing with homelessness, empty properties and anti-social behaviour, both—
  - (a) as regards combining licensing under this Part with other courses of action available to them, and
  - (b) as regards combining such licensing with measures taken by other persons.
- (4) The authority must not make a particular designation under section 80 unless—
  - (a) they have considered whether there are any other courses of action available to them (of whatever nature) that might provide an effective method of achieving the objective or objectives that the designation would be intended to achieve, and
  - (b) they consider that making the designation will significantly assist them to achieve the objective or objectives (whether or not they take any other course of action as well).

#### Commencement Information

- I79** S. 81 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 81 not force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 81 in force for E. at 15.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), [art. 3\(d\)](#); s. 81 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by [S.I. 2005/3237](#), [art. 2\(e\)](#)

### 82 Designation needs confirmation or general approval to be effective

- (1) A designation of an area as subject to selective licensing cannot come into force unless—
  - (a) it has been confirmed by the appropriate national authority; or
  - (b) it falls within a description of designations in relation to which that authority has given a general approval in accordance with subsection (6).
- (2) The appropriate national authority may either confirm, or refuse to confirm, a designation as it considers appropriate.
- (3) If the appropriate national authority confirms a designation, the designation comes into force on a date specified for this purpose by that authority.
- (4) That date must be no earlier than three months after the date on which the designation is confirmed.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) A general approval may be given in relation to a description of designations framed by reference to any matters or circumstances.
- (6) Accordingly a general approval may (in particular) be given in relation to—
  - (a) designations made by a specified local housing authority;
  - (b) designations made by a local housing authority falling within a specified description of such authorities;
  - (c) designations relating to Part 3 houses of a specified description.  
 “Specified” means specified by the appropriate national authority in the approval.
- (7) If, by virtue of a general approval, a designation does not need to be confirmed before it comes into force, the designation comes into force on the date specified for this purpose in the designation.
- (8) That date must be no earlier than three months after the date on which the designation is made.
- (9) Where a designation comes into force, this Part applies in relation to the occupation by persons of houses in the area on or after the coming into force of the designation even if their occupation began before, or in pursuance of a contract made before, it came into force.

#### Commencement Information

**180** S. 82 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 82 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 82 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 82 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 83 Notification requirements relating to designations

- (1) This section applies to a designation—
  - (a) when it is confirmed under section 82, or
  - (b) (if it is not required to be so confirmed) when it is made by the local housing authority.
- (2) As soon as the designation is confirmed or made, the authority must publish in the prescribed manner a notice stating—
  - (a) that the designation has been made,
  - (b) whether or not the designation was required to be confirmed and either that it has been confirmed or that a general approval under section 82 applied to it (giving details of the approval in question),
  - (c) the date on which the designation is to come into force, and
  - (d) any other information which may be prescribed.
- (3) After publication of a notice under subsection (2), and for as long as the designation is in force, the local housing authority must make available to the public in accordance with any prescribed requirements—
  - (a) copies of the designation, and
  - (b) such information relating to the designation as is prescribed.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) In this section “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.

#### Commencement Information

**181** S. 83 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 83 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 83 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 83 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 84 Duration, review and revocation of designations

- (1) Unless previously revoked under subsection (4), a designation ceases to have effect at the time that is specified for this purpose in the designation.
- (2) That time must be no later than five years after the date on which the designation comes into force.
- (3) A local housing authority must from time to time review the operation of any designation made by them.
- (4) If following a review they consider it appropriate to do so, the authority may revoke the designation.
- (5) If they do revoke the designation, the designation ceases to have effect on the date that is specified by the authority for this purpose.
- (6) On revoking a designation, the authority must publish notice of the revocation in such manner as is prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.

#### Commencement Information

**182** S. 84 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 84 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 84 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 84 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Houses required to be licensed*

## 85 Requirement for Part 3 houses to be licensed

- (1) Every Part 3 house must be licensed under this Part unless—
  - (a) it is an HMO to which Part 2 applies (see section 55(2)), or
  - (b) a temporary exemption notice is in force in relation to it under section 86, or
  - (c) a management order is in force in relation to it under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4.
- (2) A licence under this Part is a licence authorising occupation of the house concerned under one or more tenancies or licences within section 79(2)(b).
- (3) Sections 87 to 90 deal with applications for licences, the granting or refusal of licences and the imposition of licence conditions.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The local housing authority must take all reasonable steps to secure that applications for licences are made to them in respect of houses in their area which are required to be licensed under this Part but are not so licensed.
- (5) In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires—
  - (a) references to a Part 3 house are to a house to which this Part applies (see section 79(2)),
  - (b) references to a licence are to a licence under this Part,
  - (c) references to a licence holder are to be read accordingly, and
  - (d) references to a house being (or not being) licensed under this Part are to its being (or not being) a house in respect of which a licence is in force under this Part.

#### Commencement Information

**183** S. 85 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 85 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 85 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 85 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 86 Temporary exemption from licensing requirement

- (1) This section applies where a person having control of or managing a Part 3 house which is required to be licensed under this Part (see section 85(1)) but is not so licensed, notifies the local housing authority of his intention to take particular steps with a view to securing that the house is no longer required to be licensed.
- (2) The authority may, if they think fit, serve on that person a notice under this section (“a temporary exemption notice”) in respect of the house.
- (3) If a temporary exemption notice is served under this section, the house is (in accordance with section 85(1)) not required to be licensed under this Part during the period for which the notice is in force.
- (4) A temporary exemption notice under this section is in force—
  - (a) for the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which it is served, or
  - (b) (in the case of a notice served by virtue of subsection (5)) for the period of 3 months after the date when the first notice ceases to be in force.
- (5) If the authority—
  - (a) receive a further notification under subsection (1), and
  - (b) consider that there are exceptional circumstances that justify the service of a second temporary exemption notice in respect of the house that would take effect from the end of the period of 3 months applying to the first notice,
 the authority may serve a second such notice on the person having control of or managing the house (but no further notice may be served by virtue of this subsection).
- (6) If the authority decide not to serve a temporary exemption notice in response to a notification under subsection (1), they must without delay serve on the person concerned a notice informing him of—
  - (a) the decision,
  - (b) the reasons for it and the date on which it was made,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) the right to appeal against the decision under subsection (7), and
  - (d) the period within which an appeal may be made under that subsection.
- (7) The person concerned may appeal to [<sup>F39</sup>the appropriate tribunal] against the decision within the period of 28 days beginning with the date specified under subsection (6) as the date on which it was made.
- (8) Such an appeal—
- (a) is to be by way of a re-hearing, but
  - (b) may be determined having regard to matters of which the authority were unaware.
- (9) The tribunal—
- (a) may confirm or reverse the decision of the authority, and
  - (b) if it reverses the decision, must direct the authority to issue a temporary exemption notice with effect from such date as the tribunal directs.

#### Textual Amendments

**F39** Words in s. 86(7) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), [art. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 156](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I84** S. 86 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 86 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 86 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 86 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S. I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Grant or refusal of licences*

#### **87 Applications for licences**

- (1) An application for a licence must be made to the local housing authority.
- (2) The application must be made in accordance with such requirements as the authority may specify.
- (3) The authority may, in particular, require the application to be accompanied by a fee fixed by the authority.
- (4) The power of the authority to specify requirements under this section is subject to any regulations made under subsection (5).
- (5) The appropriate national authority may by regulations make provision about the making of applications under this section.
- (6) Such regulations may, in particular—
  - (a) specify the manner and form in which applications are to be made;
  - (b) require the applicant to give copies of the application, or information about it, to particular persons;
  - (c) specify the information which is to be supplied in connection with applications;

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) specify the maximum fees which may be charged (whether by specifying amounts or methods for calculating amounts);
  - (e) specify cases in which no fees are to be charged or fees are to be refunded.
- (7) When fixing fees under this section, the local housing authority may (subject to any regulations made under subsection (5)) take into account—
- (a) all costs incurred by the authority in carrying out their functions under this Part, and
  - (b) all costs incurred by them in carrying out their functions under Chapter 1 of Part 4 in relation to Part 3 houses (so far as they are not recoverable under or by virtue of any provision of that Chapter).

#### Commencement Information

**I85** S. 87 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 87 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 87 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 87 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

## 88 Grant or refusal of licence

- (1) Where an application in respect of a house is made to the local housing authority under section 87, the authority must either—
- (a) grant a licence in accordance with subsection (2), or
  - (b) refuse to grant a licence.
- (2) If the authority are satisfied as to the matters mentioned in subsection (3), they may grant a licence either—
- (a) to the applicant, or
  - (b) to some other person, if both he and the applicant agree.
- (3) The matters are—
- (a) that the proposed licence holder—
    - (i) is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder, and
    - (ii) is, out of all the persons reasonably available to be the licence holder in respect of the house, the most appropriate person to be the licence holder;
  - [<sup>F40</sup>(aa) that no banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016 is in force against a person who—
    - (i) owns an estate or interest in the house or part of it, and
    - (ii) is a lessor or licensor of the house or part;]
    - (b) that the proposed manager of the house is either—
      - (i) the person having control of the house, or
      - (ii) a person who is an agent or employee of the person having control of the house;
    - (c) that the proposed manager of the house is a fit and proper person to be the manager of the house; and
    - (d) that the proposed management arrangements for the house are otherwise satisfactory.

(4) Section 89 applies for the purposes of this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F40** S. 88(3)(aa) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 7](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

### Commencement Information

- I86** S. 88 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 88 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 88 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 88 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 89 Tests for fitness etc. and satisfactory management arrangements

- (1) In deciding for the purposes of section 88(3)(a) or (c) whether a person (“P”) is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder or (as the case may be) the manager of the house, the local housing authority must have regard (among other things) to any evidence within subsection (2) or (3).
  - (2) Evidence is within this subsection if it shows that P has—
    - (a) committed any offence involving fraud or other dishonesty, or violence or drugs, or any offence listed in Schedule 3 to the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (c. 42) (offences attracting notification requirements);
    - (b) practised unlawful discrimination on grounds of sex, colour, race, ethnic or national origins or disability in, or in connection with, the carrying on of any business; or
    - (c) contravened any provision of the law relating to housing or of landlord and tenant law.
  - (3) Evidence is within this subsection if—
    - (a) it shows that any person associated or formerly associated with P (whether on a personal, work or other basis) has done any of the things set out in subsection (2)(a) to (c), and
    - (b) it appears to the authority that the evidence is relevant to the question whether P is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder or (as the case may be) the manager of the house.
- [<sup>F41</sup>(3C) A person is not a fit and proper person for the purposes of section 88(3)(a) or (c) if a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016 is in force against the person.]
- (4) For the purposes of section 88(3)(a) the local housing authority must assume, unless the contrary is shown, that the person having control of the house is a more appropriate person to be the licence holder than a person not having control of it.
  - (5) In deciding for the purposes of section 88(3)(d) whether the proposed management arrangements for the house are otherwise satisfactory, the local housing authority must have regard (among other things) to the considerations mentioned in subsection (6).
  - (6) The considerations are—
    - (a) whether any person proposed to be involved in the management of the house has a sufficient level of competence to be so involved;
    - (b) whether any person proposed to be involved in the management of the house (other than the manager) is a fit and proper person to be so involved; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) whether any proposed management structures and funding arrangements are suitable.
- (7) Any reference in section 88(3)(b)(i) or (ii) or subsection (4) above to a person having control of the house, or to being a person of any other description, includes a reference to a person who is proposing to have control of the house, or (as the case may be) to be a person of that description, at the time when the licence would come into force.

#### Textual Amendments

**F41** S. 89(3C) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 8](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

**I87** S. 89 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 89 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 89 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 89 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 90 Licence conditions

- (1) A licence may include such conditions as the local housing authority consider appropriate for regulating the management, use or occupation of the house concerned.
- (2) Those conditions may, in particular, include (so far as appropriate in the circumstances)—
- (a) conditions imposing restrictions or prohibitions on the use or occupation of particular parts of the house by persons occupying it;
  - (b) conditions requiring the taking of reasonable and practicable steps to prevent or reduce anti-social behaviour by persons occupying or visiting the house.
- (3) A licence may also include—
- (a) conditions requiring facilities and equipment to be made available in the house for the purpose of meeting standards prescribed for the purposes of this section by regulations made by the appropriate national authority;
  - (b) conditions requiring such facilities and equipment to be kept in repair and proper working order;
  - (c) conditions requiring, in the case of any works needed in order for any such facilities or equipment to be made available or to meet any such standards, that the works are carried out within such period or periods as may be specified in, or determined under, the licence.
- (4) A licence must include the conditions required by Schedule 4.
- (5) As regards the relationship between the authority's power to impose conditions under this section and functions exercisable by them under or for the purposes of Part 1 ("Part 1 functions")—
- (a) the authority must proceed on the basis that, in general, they should seek to identify, remove or reduce category 1 or category 2 hazards in the house by the exercise of Part 1 functions and not by means of licence conditions;
  - (b) this does not, however, prevent the authority from imposing (in accordance with subsection (3)) licence conditions relating to the installation or



**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- maintenance of facilities or equipment within subsection (3)(a) above, even if the same result could be achieved by the exercise of Part 1 functions;
- (c) the fact that licence conditions are imposed for a particular purpose that could be achieved by the exercise of Part 1 functions does not affect the way in which Part 1 functions can be subsequently exercised by the authority.
- (6) A licence may not include conditions imposing restrictions or obligations on a particular person other than the licence holder unless that person has consented to the imposition of the restrictions or obligations.
- (7) A licence may not include conditions requiring (or intended to secure) any alteration in the terms of any tenancy or licence under which any person occupies the house.

#### Commencement Information

- I88** S. 90 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 90 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 90 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 90 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

## 91 Licences: general requirements and duration

- (1) A licence may not relate to more than one Part 3 house.
- (2) A licence may be granted before the time when it is required by virtue of this Part but, if so, the licence cannot come into force until that time.
- (3) A licence—
- comes into force at the time that is specified in or determined under the licence for this purpose, and
  - unless previously terminated by subsection (7) or revoked under section 93 [F42 or 93A], continues in force for the period that is so specified or determined.
- (4) That period must not end more than 5 years after—
- the date on which the licence was granted, or
  - if the licence was granted as mentioned in subsection (2), the date when the licence comes into force.
- (5) Subsection (3)(b) applies even if, at any time during that period, the house concerned subsequently ceases to be a Part 3 house or becomes an HMO to which Part 2 applies (see section 55(2)).
- (6) A licence may not be transferred to another person.
- (7) If the holder of the licence dies while the licence is in force, the licence ceases to be in force on his death.
- (8) However, during the period of 3 months beginning with the date of the licence holder's death, the house is to be treated for the purposes of this Part as if on that date a temporary exemption notice had been served in respect of the house under section 86.
- (9) If, at any time during that period (“the initial period”), the personal representatives of the licence holder request the local housing authority to do so, the authority may serve on them a notice which, during the period of 3 months after the date on which the initial period ends, has the same effect as a temporary exemption notice under section 86.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) Subsections (6) to (8) of section 86 apply (with any necessary modifications) in relation to a decision by the authority not to serve such a notice as they apply in relation to a decision not to serve a temporary exemption notice.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F42** Words in s. 91(3)(b) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 9](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I89** S. 91 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 91 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 91 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 91 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Variation and revocation of licences*

## **92 Variation of licences**

- (1) The local housing authority may vary a licence—
- (a) if they do so with the agreement of the licence holder, or
  - (b) if they consider that there has been a change of circumstances since the time when the licence was granted.

For this purpose “change of circumstances” includes any discovery of new information.

- (2) A variation made with the agreement of the licence holder takes effect at the time when it is made.
- (3) Otherwise, a variation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 35 of Schedule 5 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).
- (4) The power to vary a licence under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
- (a) on an application made by the licence holder or a relevant person, or
  - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.
- (5) In subsection (4) “relevant person” means any person (other than the licence holder)—
- (a) who has an estate or interest in the house concerned (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or
  - (b) who is a person managing or having control of the house (and does not fall within paragraph (a)), or
  - (c) on whom any restriction or obligation is imposed by the licence in accordance with section 90(6).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Commencement Information

**I90** S. 92 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 92 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 92 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 92 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 93 <sup>[F43]</sup> Power to revoke licences

- (1) The local housing authority may revoke a licence—
- (a) if they do so with the agreement of the licence holder,
  - (b) in any of the cases mentioned in subsection (2) (circumstances relating to licence holder or other person),
  - (c) in any of the cases mentioned in subsection (3) (circumstances relating to house concerned), or
  - (d) in any other circumstances prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.
- (2) The cases referred to in subsection (1)(b) are as follows—
- (a) where the authority consider that the licence holder or any other person has committed a serious breach of a condition of the licence or repeated breaches of such a condition;
  - (b) where the authority no longer consider that the licence holder is a fit and proper person to be the licence holder; and
  - (c) where the authority no longer consider that the management of the house is being carried on by persons who are in each case fit and proper persons to be involved in its management.
- Section 89(1) applies in relation to paragraph (b) or (c) above as it applies in relation to section 88(3)(a) or (c).
- (3) The cases referred to in subsection (1)(c) are as follows—
- (a) where the house to which the licence relates ceases to be a Part 3 house;
  - (b) where a licence has been granted under Part 2 in respect of the house;
  - (c) where the authority consider at any time that, were the licence to expire at that time, they would, for a particular reason relating to the structure of the house, refuse to grant a new licence to the licence holder on similar terms in respect of it.
- (4) A revocation made with the agreement of the licence holder takes effect at the time when it is made.
- (5) Otherwise, a revocation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 35 of Schedule 5 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).

This is subject to subsection (6).

- (6) A revocation made in a case within subsection (3)(b) cannot come into force before such time as would be the operative time for the purposes of subsection (5) under paragraph 35 of Schedule 5 on the assumption that paragraph 35 applied—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) to an appeal against the Part 2 licence under paragraph 31 of the Schedule as it applies to an appeal under paragraph 32 of the Schedule, and
  - (b) to the period for appealing against the Part 2 licence mentioned in paragraph 33(1) of the Schedule as it applies to the period mentioned in paragraph 33(2) of the Schedule.
- (7) The power to revoke a licence under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
- (a) on an application made by the licence holder or a relevant person, or
  - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.
- (8) In subsection (7) “relevant person” means any person (other than the licence holder)—
- (a) who has an estate or interest in the house concerned (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or
  - (b) who is a person managing or having control of the house (and does not fall within paragraph (a)), or
  - (c) on whom any restriction or obligation is imposed by the licence in accordance with section 90(6).

#### Textual Amendments

**F43** S. 93 heading substituted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 10](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

**I91** S. 93 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 93 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 93 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 93 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### [<sup>F44</sup>93A Duty to revoke licence in banning order cases

- (1) The local housing authority must revoke a licence if a banning order is made against the licence holder.
- (2) The local housing authority must revoke a licence if a banning order is made against a person who—
  - (a) owns an estate or interest in the house or part of it, and
  - (b) is a lessor or licensor of the house or part.
- (3) The notice served by the local housing authority under paragraph 24 of Schedule 5 must specify when the revocation takes effect.
- (4) The revocation must not take effect earlier than the end of the period of 7 days beginning with the day on which the notice is served.
- (5) In this section “banning order” means a banning order under section 16 of the [Housing and Planning Act 2016](#).]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

- F44** S. 93A inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 2 para. 11](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

## Procedure and appeals

### 94 Procedural requirements and appeals against licence decisions

Schedule 5 (which deals with procedural requirements relating to the grant, refusal, variation or revocation of licences and with appeals against licence decisions) has effect for the purposes of this Part.

### Commencement Information

- I92** S. 94 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 94 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 94 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 94 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## Enforcement

### 95 Offences in relation to licensing of houses under this Part

- (1) A person commits an offence if he is a person having control of or managing a house which is required to be licensed under this Part (see section 85(1)) but is not so licensed.
- (2) A person commits an offence if—
  - (a) he is a licence holder or a person on whom restrictions or obligations under a licence are imposed in accordance with section 90(6), and
  - (b) he fails to comply with any condition of the licence.
- (3) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1) it is a defence that, at the material time—
  - (a) a notification had been duly given in respect of the house under section 62(1) or 86(1), or
  - (b) an application for a licence had been duly made in respect of the house under section 87,and that notification or application was still effective (see subsection (7)).
- (4) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1) or (2) it is a defence that he had a reasonable excuse—
  - (a) for having control of or managing the house in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1), or
  - (b) for failing to comply with the condition,as the case may be.
- (5) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction to [<sup>F45</sup>a fine] .

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) A person who commits an offence under subsection (2) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- [<sup>F46</sup>(6A) See also section 249A (financial penalties as alternative to prosecution for certain housing offences in England).
- (6B) If a local housing authority has imposed a financial penalty on a person under section 249A in respect of conduct amounting to an offence under this section the person may not be convicted of an offence under this section in respect of the conduct.]
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (3) a notification or application is “effective” at a particular time if at that time it has not been withdrawn, and either—
- (a) the authority have not decided whether to serve a temporary exemption notice, or (as the case may be) grant a licence, in pursuance of the notification or application, or
  - (b) if they have decided not to do so, one of the conditions set out in subsection (8) is met.
- (8) The conditions are—
- (a) that the period for appealing against the decision of the authority not to serve or grant such a notice or licence (or against any relevant decision of [<sup>F47</sup>the appropriate tribunal]) has not expired, or
  - (b) that an appeal has been brought against the authority’s decision (or against any relevant decision of such a tribunal) and the appeal has not been determined or withdrawn.
- (9) In subsection (8) “relevant decision” means a decision which is given on an appeal to the tribunal and confirms the authority’s decision (with or without variation).

#### Textual Amendments

- F45** Words in s. 95(5) substituted (12.3.2015) by [The Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 \(Fines on Summary Conviction\) Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/664\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 4 para. 37(3)** (with reg. 5(1))
- F46** S. 95(6A)(6B) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), **Sch. 9 para. 4**; S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(f)
- F47** Words in s. 95(8)(a) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 157** (with Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

- I93** S. 95 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 95 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 95(2)(4)(6) in force for E. at 6.4.2006 and s. 95 in force for E. in so far as not already in force at 6.7.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(c)(2)(b)** (with Sch.); s. 95 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

## 96 Other consequences of operating unlicensed houses: rent repayment orders

- (1) For the purposes of this section a house is an “unlicensed house” if—
- (a) it is required to be licensed under this Part but is not so licensed, and
  - (b) neither of the conditions in subsection (2) is satisfied.
- (2) The conditions are—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) that a notification has been duly given in respect of the house under section 62(1) or 86(1) and that notification is still effective (as defined by section 95(7));
  - (b) that an application for a licence has been duly made in respect of the house under section 87 and that application is still effective (as so defined).
- (3) No rule of law relating to the validity or enforceability of contracts in circumstances involving illegality is to affect the validity or enforceability of—
- (a) any provision requiring the payment of rent or the making of any other periodical payment in connection with any tenancy or licence of the whole or a part of an unlicensed house, or
  - (b) any other provision of such a tenancy or licence.
- (4) But amounts paid in respect of rent or other periodical payments payable in connection with such a tenancy or licence may be recovered in accordance with subsection (5) and section 97 [<sup>F48</sup>(in the case of a house in Wales) or in accordance with Chapter 4 of Part 2 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016 (in the case of a house in England)] .
- (5) If—
- (a) an application in respect of a house [<sup>F49</sup>in Wales] is made to [<sup>F50</sup>the appropriate tribunal] by the local housing authority or an occupier of the whole or part of the house, and
  - (b) the tribunal is satisfied as to the matters mentioned in subsection (6) or (8), the tribunal may make an order (a “rent repayment order”) requiring the appropriate person to pay to the applicant such amount in respect of the [<sup>F51</sup>relevant award or awards of universal credit or the] housing benefit paid as mentioned in subsection (6) (b), or (as the case may be) the periodical payments paid as mentioned in subsection (8) (b), as is specified in the order (see section 97(2) to (8)).
- (6) If the application is made by the local housing authority, the tribunal must be satisfied as to the following matters—
- (a) that, at any time within the period of 12 months ending with the date of the notice of intended proceedings required by subsection (7), the appropriate person has committed an offence under section 95(1) in relation to the house (whether or not he has been charged or convicted),
  - (b)
  - (c) that the requirements of subsection (7) have been complied with in relation to the application.
- [<sup>F53</sup>(6A) In subsection (6)(b)(i), “relevant award of universal credit” means an award of universal credit the calculation of which included an amount under section 11 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012, calculated in accordance with Schedule 4 to the Universal Credit Regulations 2013 (housing costs element for renters) ( [S.I. 2013/376](#) ) or any corresponding provision replacing that Schedule, in respect of periodical payments payable in connection with the occupation of the whole or any part or parts of the house. ]
- (7) Those requirements are as follows—
- (a) the authority must have served on the appropriate person a notice (a “notice of intended proceedings”)—
    - (i) informing him that the authority are proposing to make an application under subsection (5),
    - (ii) setting out the reasons why they propose to do so,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (iii) stating the amount that they will seek to recover under that subsection and how that amount is calculated, and
  - (iv) inviting him to make representations to them within a period specified in the notice of not less than 28 days;
  - (b) that period must have expired; and
  - (c) the authority must have considered any representations made to them within that period by the appropriate person.
- (8) If the application is made by an occupier of the whole or part of the house, the tribunal must be satisfied as to the following matters—
- (a) that the appropriate person has been convicted of an offence under section 95(1) in relation to the house, or has been required by a rent repayment order to make a payment in respect of
    - (i)
    - (ii) housing benefit paid in connection with occupation of the whole or any part or parts of the house],
  - (b) that the occupier paid, to a person having control of or managing the house, periodical payments in respect of occupation of the whole or part of the house during any period during which it appears to the tribunal that such an offence was being committed in relation to the house, and
  - (c) that the application is made within the period of 12 months beginning with—
    - (i) the date of the conviction or order, or
    - (ii) if such a conviction was followed by such an order (or vice versa), the date of the later of them.
- (9) Where a local housing authority serve a notice of intended proceedings on any person under this section, they must ensure—
- (a) that a copy of the notice is received by the department of the authority responsible for administering the housing benefit to which the proceedings would relate; and
  - (b) that that department is subsequently kept informed of any matters relating to the proceedings that are likely to be of interest to it in connection with the administration of housing benefit.
- (10) In this section—
- “ the appropriate person ”, in relation to any payment of [<sup>F55</sup> universal credit or ] housing benefit or periodical payment payable in connection with occupation of the whole or a part of a house, means the person who at the time of the payment was entitled to receive on his own account periodical payments payable in connection with such occupation;
  - “ housing benefit ” means housing benefit provided by virtue of a scheme under section 123 of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (c. 4);
  - “ occupier ”, in relation to any periodical payment, means a person who was an occupier at the time of the payment, whether under a tenancy or licence (and “ occupation ” has a corresponding meaning);
  - [<sup>F56</sup>“periodical payments” means—
  - (a) payments in respect of which an amount under section 11 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012 may be included in the calculation of an award of universal credit, as referred to in paragraph 3 of Schedule 4 to



*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- the Universal Credit Regulations 2013 (“relevant payments”) ( [S.I. 2013/376](#) ) or any corresponding provision replacing that paragraph; and
- (b) periodical payments in respect of which housing benefit may be paid by virtue of regulation 12 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 or any corresponding provision replacing that regulation;]
- (11) For the purposes of this section an amount which—
- (a) is not actually paid by an occupier but is used by him to discharge the whole or part of his liability in respect of a periodical payment (for example, by offsetting the amount against any such liability), and
- (b) is not an amount of [<sup>F57</sup>universal credit or] housing benefit,
- is to be regarded as an amount paid by the occupier in respect of that periodical payment.

#### Textual Amendments

- F48** Words in s. 96(4) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 50(3)(a)**, 216(3); [S.I. 2017/281](#), **reg. 4(c)**
- F49** Words in s. 96(5)(a) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 50(3)(b)**, 216(3); [S.I. 2017/281](#), **reg. 4(c)**
- F50** Words in s. 96(5)(a) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), **art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 158** (with Sch. 3)
- F51** Words in s. 96(5) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 18(4)(a)** and words in s. 96(5) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), **regs. 1(1), 3(4)(a)**
- F52** S. 96(6)(b) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 18(4)(b)** and S. 96(6)(b) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), **regs. 1(1), 3(4)(b)**
- F53** S. 96(6A) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 18(4)(c)** and S. 96(6A) inserted (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), **regs. 1(1), 3(4)(c)**
- F54** Words in s. 96(8)(a) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 18(4)(d)** and words in s. 96(8)(a) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), **regs. 1(1), 3(4)(d)**
- F55** Words in s. 96(10) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 18(4)(e)(i)** and words in s. 96(10) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), **regs. 1(1), 3(4)(e)(i)**
- F56** Words in s. 96(10) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 18(4)(e)(ii)** and words in s. 96(10) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), **regs. 1(1), 3(4)(e)(ii)**
- F57** Words in s. 96(11)(b) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), **regs. 1(2), 18(4)(f)** and words in s. 96(11)(b) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), 3(4)(f)

#### Commencement Information

**I94** S. 96 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 96 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 96 in force for E. at 6.7.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 96 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 97 Further provisions about rent repayment orders

- (1) This section applies in relation to orders made by residential property tribunals under section 96(5).
- (2) Where, on an application by the local housing authority, the tribunal is satisfied—
  - (a) that a person has been convicted of an offence under section 95(1) in relation to the house, and
  - (b) the tribunal must make a rent repayment order requiring the appropriate person to pay to the authority [<sup>F59</sup>the amount mentioned in subsection (2A)].

This is subject to subsections (3), (4) and (8).

[<sup>F60</sup>(2A) The amount referred to in subsection (2) is—

- (a) an amount equal to—
    - (i) where one relevant award of universal credit was paid as mentioned in subsection (2)(b)(i), the amount included in the calculation of that award under section 11 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012, calculated in accordance with Schedule 4 to the Universal Credit Regulations 2013 (housing costs element for renters) ( [S.I. 2013/376](#) ) or any corresponding provision replacing that Schedule, or the amount of the award if less; or
    - (ii) if more than one such award was paid as mentioned in subsection (2)(b)(i), the sum of the amounts included in the calculation of those awards as referred to in sub-paragraph (i), or the sum of the amounts of those awards if less, or
  - (b) an amount equal to the total amount of housing benefit paid as mentioned in subsection (2)(b)(ii),  
 (as the case may be).]
- (3) If the total of the amounts received by the appropriate person in respect of periodical payments payable as mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (2) (“the rent total”) is less than the [<sup>F61</sup>amount mentioned in subsection (2A)], the amount required to be paid by virtue of a rent repayment order made in accordance with that subsection is limited to the rent total.
  - (4) A rent repayment order made in accordance with subsection (2) may not require the payment of any amount which the tribunal is satisfied that, by reason of any exceptional circumstances, it would be unreasonable for that person to be required to pay.
  - (5) In a case where subsection (2) does not apply, the amount required to be paid by virtue of a rent repayment order under section 96(5) is to be such amount as the tribunal considers reasonable in the circumstances.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

This is subject to subsections (6) to (8).

- (6) In such a case the tribunal must, in particular, take into account the following matters—
- (a) the total amount of relevant payments paid in connection with occupation of the house during any period during which it appears to the tribunal that an offence was being committed by the appropriate person in relation to the house under section 95(1);
  - (b) the extent to which that total amount—
    - (i) consisted of, or derived from, payments of [<sup>F62</sup>relevant awards of universal credit or] housing benefit, and
    - (ii) was actually received by the appropriate person;
  - (c) whether the appropriate person has at any time been convicted of an offence under section 95(1) in relation to the house;
  - (d) the conduct and financial circumstances of the appropriate person; and
  - (e) where the application is made by an occupier, the conduct of the occupier.
- (7) In subsection (6) “relevant payments” means—
- (a) in relation to an application by a local housing authority, payments of [<sup>F63</sup>relevant awards of universal credit] housing benefit or periodical payments payable by occupiers;
  - (b) in relation to an application by an occupier, periodical payments payable by the occupier, less
    - (i) [<sup>F64</sup> where one or more relevant awards of relevant universal credit were payable during the period in question, the amount mentioned in subsection (2A)(a) in respect of the award or awards that related to the occupation of the part of the HMO occupied by him during that period; or
    - (ii) any amount of housing benefit payable in respect of the occupation of the part of the HMO occupied by him during the period in question ].
- (8) A rent repayment order may not require the payment of an amount which—
- (a) (where the application is made by a local housing authority) is in respect of any time falling outside the period of 12 months mentioned in section 96(6)(a); or
  - (b) (where the application is made by an occupier) is in respect of any time falling outside the period of 12 months ending with the date of the occupier’s application under section 96(5);
- and the period to be taken into account under subsection (6)(a) above is restricted accordingly.
- (9) Any amount payable to a local housing authority under a rent repayment order—
- (a) does not, when recovered by the authority, constitute an amount of [<sup>F65</sup>universal credit or] housing benefit recovered by them, and
  - (b) is, until recovered by them, a legal charge on the house which is a local land charge.
- (10) For the purpose of enforcing that charge the authority have the same powers and remedies under the Law of Property Act 1925 (c. 20) and otherwise as if they were mortgagees by deed having powers of sale and lease, and of accepting surrenders of leases and of appointing a receiver.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
 been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (11) The power of appointing a receiver is exercisable at any time after the end of the period of one month beginning with the date on which the charge takes effect.
- (12) If the authority subsequently grant a licence under Part 2 or this Part in respect of the house to the appropriate person or any person acting on his behalf, the conditions contained in the licence may include a condition requiring the licence holder—
- (a) to pay to the authority any amount payable to them under the rent repayment order and not so far recovered by them; and
  - (b) to do so in such instalments as are specified in the licence.
- (13) If the authority subsequently make a management order under Chapter 1 of Part 4 in respect of the house, the order may contain such provisions as the authority consider appropriate for the recovery of any amount payable to them under the rent repayment order and not so far recovered by them.
- (14) Any amount payable to an occupier by virtue of a rent repayment order is recoverable by the occupier as a debt due to him from the appropriate person.
- (15) The appropriate national authority may by regulations make such provision as it considers appropriate for supplementing the provisions of this section and section 96, and in particular—
- (a) for securing that persons are not unfairly prejudiced by rent repayment orders (whether in cases where there have been over-payments of [<sup>F66</sup>universal credit or] housing benefit or otherwise);
  - (b) for requiring or authorising amounts received by local housing authorities by virtue of rent repayment orders to be dealt with in such manner as is specified in the regulations.
- (16) Section 96(10) and (11) apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of section 96.

#### Textual Amendments

- F58** S. 97(2)(b) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), 18(5)(a)(i) and s. 97(2)(b) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(5)(a)(i)**
- F59** Words in s. 97(2) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(5)(a)(ii)** and words in s. 97(2) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(5)(a)(ii)**
- F60** S. 97(2A) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(5)(b)** and S. 97(2A) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(5)(b)**
- F61** Words in s. 97(3) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(5)(c)** and words in s. 97(3) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential Provisions\) \(Childcare, Housing and Transport\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1788\)](#), regs. 1(1), **3(5)(c)**
- F62** Words in s. 97(6)(b)(i) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/630\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18(5)(d)** and words in s. 97(6)(b)(i) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by [The Universal Credit \(Consequential](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), 3(5)(d)

- F63** Words in s. 97(7)(a) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), 18(5)(e)(i) and words in s. 97(7)(a) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), 3(5)(e)(i)
- F64** Words in s. 97(7)(b) substituted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), 18(5)(e)(ii) and words in s. 97(7)(b) substituted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), 3(5)(e)(ii)
- F65** Words in s. 97(9)(a) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), 18(5)(f) and words in s. 97(9)(a) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), 3(5)(f)
- F66** Words in s. 97(15)(a) inserted (E.) (29.4.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/630), regs. 1(2), 18(5)(f) and words in s. 97(15)(a) inserted (W.) (17.7.2013) by The Universal Credit (Consequential Provisions) (Childcare, Housing and Transport) (Wales) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/1788), regs. 1(1), 3(5)(f)

#### Commencement Information

- I95** S. 97 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 97 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 97 in force for E. at 6.7.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(2)(b) (with Sch.); s. 97 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 98 Other consequences of operating unlicensed houses: restriction on terminating tenancies

(1) No section 21 notice may be given in relation to a shorthold tenancy of the whole or part of an unlicensed house so long as it remains such a house.

(2) In this section—

a “section 21 notice” means a notice under section 21(1)(b) or (4)(a) of the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50) (recovery of possession on termination of shorthold tenancy);

a “shorthold tenancy” means an assured shorthold tenancy within the meaning of Chapter 2 of Part 1 of that Act;

“unlicensed house” has the same meaning as in section 96 of this Act.

#### Commencement Information

- I96** S. 98 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 98 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 98 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 98 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Supplementary provisions

## 99 Meaning of “house” etc.

In this Part—

“dwelling” means a building or part of a building occupied or intended to be occupied as a separate dwelling;

“house” means a building or part of a building consisting of one or more dwellings;

and references to a house include (where the context permits) any yard, garden, outhouses and appurtenances belonging to, or usually enjoyed with, it (or any part of it).

#### Commencement Information

**I97** S. 99 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 99 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 99 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 99 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 100 Index of defined expressions: Part 3

The following table shows where expressions used in this Part are defined or otherwise explained.

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Provision of this Act</i>
Anti-social behaviour	Section 57(5)
Appropriate national authority	Section 261(1)
Category 1 hazard	Section 2(1)
Category 2 hazard	Section 2(1)
District of local housing authority	Section 261(6)
Dwelling	Section 99
House	Section 99
Licence and licence holder	Section 85(5)
Licence (to occupy premises)	Section 262(9)
Local housing authority	Section 261(2) to (5)
Occupier (and related expressions)	Section 262(6)
Part 3 house	Section 85(5), together with section 79(2)
Person having control	Section 263(1) and (2) (and see also section 89(7))
Person having estate or interest	Section 262(8)
Person managing	Section 263(3)
Person involved in management	Section 263(5)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Residential property tribunal

Section 229

Tenant

Section 262(1) to (5).

---

### Commencement Information

**I98** S. 100 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 100 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 100 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S. I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with **Sch.**); s. 100 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with **Sch.**)

## PART 4

### ADDITIONAL CONTROL PROVISIONS IN RELATION TO RESIDENTIAL ACCOMMODATION

#### CHAPTER 1

##### INTERIM AND FINAL MANAGEMENT ORDERS

###### *Introductory*

### 101 Interim and final management orders: introductory

- (1) This Chapter deals with the making by a local housing authority of—
  - (a) an interim management order (see section 102), or
  - (b) a final management order (see section 113),
 in respect of an HMO or a Part 3 house [<sup>F67</sup>or property let in breach of a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016].
- (2) Section 103 deals with the making of an interim management order in respect of a house to which that section applies.
- (3) An interim management order is an order (expiring not more than 12 months after it is made) which is made for the purpose of securing that the following steps are taken in relation to the house—
  - (a) any immediate steps which the authority consider necessary to protect the health, safety or welfare of persons occupying the house, or persons occupying or having an estate or interest in any premises in the vicinity, and
  - (b) any other steps which the authority think appropriate with a view to the proper management of the house pending <sup>F68</sup>... the making of a final management order in respect of it (or, if appropriate, the revocation of the interim management order).
- (4) A final management order is an order (expiring not more than 5 years after it is made) which is made for the purpose of securing the proper management of the house on a long-term basis in accordance with a management scheme contained in the order.
- (5) In this Chapter any reference to “the house”, in relation to an interim or final management order (other than an order under section 102(7) [<sup>F69</sup>or (7A)]), is a reference to the HMO or Part 3 house to which the order relates.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Subsection (5) has effect subject to sections 102(8) and 113(7) (exclusion of part occupied by resident landlord).
- [<sup>F70</sup>(6A) In this Chapter any reference to “the house”, in relation to an interim or final management order that relates to property let in breach of a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016, means the property let in breach of that order.
- (6B) In this Chapter any reference to property that is let in breach of a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016 includes property in respect of which a breach is (or would be) caused by a licence to occupy.
- (6C) When determining for the purposes of this Chapter whether property is let in breach of a banning order disregard any exception included in the banning order in reliance on section 17 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016.]
- (7) In this Chapter “third party”, in relation to a house, means any person who has an estate or interest in the house (other than an immediate landlord and any person who is a tenant under a lease granted under section 107(3)(c) or 116(3)(c)).

#### Textual Amendments

- F67** Words in s. 101(1) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 2\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)
- F68** Words in s. 101(3)(b) omitted (6.4.2018) by virtue of [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 2\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)
- F69** Words in s. 101(5) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 2\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)
- F70** S. 101(6A)-(6C) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 2\(5\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

- I99** S. 101 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 101 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 101 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 101 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Interim management orders: making and operation of orders*

## 102 Making of interim management orders

- (1) A local housing authority—
- (a) are under a duty to make an interim management order in respect of a house in a case within subsection (2) or (3), and
  - (b) have power to make an interim management order in respect of a house in a case within subsection (4) [<sup>F71</sup>, (7) or (7A)].
- (2) The authority must make an interim management order in respect of a house if—
- (a) it is an HMO or a Part 3 house which is required to be licensed under Part 2 or Part 3 (see section 61(1) or 85(1)) but is not so licensed, and
  - (b) they consider either—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (i) that there is no reasonable prospect of its being so licensed in the near future, or
  - (ii) that the health and safety condition is satisfied (see section 104).
- (3) The authority must make an interim management order in respect of a house if—
- (a) it is an HMO or a Part 3 house which is required to be licensed under Part 2 or Part 3 and is so licensed,
  - (b) they have revoked the licence concerned but the revocation is not yet in force, and
  - (c) they consider either—
    - (i) that, on the revocation coming into force, there will be no reasonable prospect of the house being so licensed in the near future, or
    - (ii) that, on the revocation coming into force, the health and safety condition will be satisfied (see section 104).
- (4) The authority may make an interim management order in respect of a house if—
- (a) it is an HMO other than one that is required to be licensed under Part 2, and
  - (b) on an application by the authority to [<sup>F72</sup>the appropriate tribunal], the tribunal by order authorises them to make such an order, either in the terms of a draft order submitted by them or in those terms as varied by the tribunal;
- and the authority may make such an order despite any pending appeal against the order of the tribunal (but this is without prejudice to any order that may be made on the disposal of any such appeal).
- (5) The tribunal may only authorise the authority to make an interim management order under subsection (4) if it considers that the health and safety condition is satisfied (see section 104).
- (6) In determining whether to authorise the authority to make an interim management order in respect of an HMO under subsection (4), the tribunal must have regard to the extent to which any applicable code of practice approved under section 233 has been complied with in respect of the HMO in the past.
- (7) The authority may make an interim management order in respect of a house if—
- (a) it is a house to which section 103 (special interim management orders) applies, and
  - (b) on an application by the authority to a residential property tribunal, the tribunal by order authorises them to make such an order, either in the terms of a draft order submitted by them or in those terms as varied by the tribunal;
- and the authority may make such an order despite any pending appeal against the order of the tribunal (but this is without prejudice to any order that may be made on the disposal of any such appeal).
- Subsections (2) to (6) of section 103 apply in relation to the power of [<sup>F73</sup>the appropriate tribunal] to authorise the making of an interim management order under this subsection.
- [<sup>F74</sup>(7A) The authority may make an interim management order in respect of any property let in breach of a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016.]
- (8) The authority may make an interim management order which is expressed not to apply to a part of the house that is occupied by a person who has an estate or interest in the whole of the house.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
 been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

In relation to such an order, a reference in this Chapter to “the house” does not include the part so excluded (unless the context requires otherwise, such as where the reference is to the house as an HMO or a Part 3 house).

- (9) Nothing in this section requires or authorises the making of an interim management order [<sup>F75</sup>under subsection (2), (3), (4) or (7)] in respect of a house if—
- (a) an interim management order has been previously made in respect of it, and
  - (b) the authority have not exercised any relevant function in respect of the house at any time after the making of the interim management order.
- (10) In subsection (9) “relevant function” means the function of—
- (a) granting a licence under Part 2 or 3,
  - (b) serving a temporary exemption notice under section 62 or section 86, or
  - (c) making a final management order under section 113.

#### Textual Amendments

- F71** Words in s. 102(1)(b) substituted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 3\(2\)](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F72** Words in s. 102(4)(b) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 159](#) (with Sch. 3)
- F73** Words in s. 102(7) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 159](#) (with Sch. 3)
- F74** S. 102(7A) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 3\(3\)](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F75** Words in s. 102(9) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 3\(4\)](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

- I100** S. 102 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 102 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 102 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); s. 102 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

### 103 Special interim management orders

- (1) This section applies to a house if the whole of it is occupied either—
- (a) under a single tenancy or licence that is not an exempt tenancy or licence under section 79(3) or (4), or
  - (b) under two or more tenancies or licences in respect of different dwellings contained in it, none of which is an exempt tenancy or licence under section 79(3) or (4).
- (2) [<sup>F76</sup>The appropriate tribunal] may only authorise the authority to make an interim management order in respect of such a house under section 102(7) if it considers that both of the following conditions are satisfied.
- (3) The first condition is that the circumstances relating to the house fall within any category of circumstances prescribed for the purposes of this subsection by an order under subsection (5).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) The second condition is that the making of the order is necessary for the purpose of protecting the health, safety or welfare of persons occupying, visiting or otherwise engaging in lawful activities in the vicinity of the house.
- (5) The appropriate national authority may by order—
- (a) prescribe categories of circumstances for the purposes of subsection (3),
  - (b) provide for any of the provisions of this Act to apply in relation to houses to which this section applies, or interim or final management orders made in respect of them, with any modifications specified in the order.
- (6) The categories prescribed by an order under subsection (5) are to reflect one or more of the following—
- (a) the first or second set of general conditions mentioned in subsection (3) or (6) of section 80, or
  - (b) any additional set of conditions specified under subsection (7) of that section, but (in each case) with such modifications as the appropriate national authority considers appropriate to adapt them to the circumstances of a single house.
- (7) In this section “house” has the same meaning as in Part 3 (see section 99).
- (8) In this Chapter—
- (a) any reference to “the house”, in relation to an interim management order under section 102(7), is a reference to the house to which the order relates, and
  - (b) any such reference includes (where the context permits) a reference to any yard, garden, outhouses and appurtenances belonging to, or usually enjoyed with, it (or any part of it).

#### Textual Amendments

**F76** Words in s. 103(2) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 160](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I101** S. 103 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 103 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 103 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 103 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 104 The health and safety condition

- (1) This section explains what “the health and safety condition” is for the purposes of section 102.
- (2) The health and safety condition is that the making of an interim management order is necessary for the purpose of protecting the health, safety or welfare of persons occupying the house, or persons occupying or having an estate or interest in any premises in the vicinity.
- (3) A threat to evict persons occupying a house in order to avoid the house being required to be licensed under Part 2 may constitute a threat to the welfare of those persons for the purposes of subsection (2).

This does not affect the generality of that subsection.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The health and safety condition is not to be regarded as satisfied for the purposes of section 102(2)(b)(ii) or (3)(c)(ii) where both of the conditions in subsections (5) and (6) are satisfied.
- (5) The first condition is that the local housing authority either—
  - (a) (in a case within section 102(2)(b)(ii)) are required by section 5 (general duty to take enforcement action in respect of category 1 hazards) to take a course of action within subsection (2) of that section in relation to the house, or
  - (b) (in a case within section 102(3)(c)(ii)) consider that on the revocation coming into force they will be required to take such a course of action.
- (6) The second condition is that the local housing authority consider that the health, safety or welfare of the persons in question would be adequately protected by taking that course of action.

#### Commencement Information

**I102** S. 104 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 104 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 104 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 104 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

#### 105 Operation of interim management orders

- (1) This section deals with the time when an interim management order comes into force or ceases to have effect.
- (2) The order comes into force when it is made, unless it is made under section 102(3).
- (3) If the order is made under section 102(3), it comes into force when the revocation of the licence comes into force.
- (4) The order ceases to have effect at the end of the period of 12 months beginning with the date on which it is made, unless it ceases to have effect at some other time as mentioned below.
- (5) If the order provides that it is to cease to have effect on a date falling before the end of that period, it accordingly ceases to have effect on that date.
- (6) If the order is made under section 102(3)—
  - (a) it must include a provision for determining the date on which it will cease to have effect, and
  - (b) it accordingly ceases to have effect on the date so determined.
- (7) That date must be no later than 12 months after the date on which the order comes into force.
- [<sup>F77</sup>(7A) An order under section 102(7A) ceases to have effect (if it has not already ceased to have effect) when the ban on letting housing in England ceases to have effect.
- (7B) In subsection (7A) “the ban on letting housing in England” means the ban on letting contained in the banning order mentioned in section 102(7A).]
- (8) Subsections (9) [<sup>F78</sup>to] (10) apply where—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) a final management order (“the FMO”) has been made under section 113 so as to replace the order (“the IMO”), but
  - (b) the FMO has not come into force because of an appeal to [<sup>F79</sup>the appropriate tribunal] under paragraph 24 of Schedule 6 against the making of the FMO.
- (9) If—
- (a) the house would (but for the IMO being in force) be required to be licensed under Part 2 or 3 of this Act (see section 61(1) or 85(1)), and
  - (b) the date on which—
    - (i) the FMO,
    - (ii) any licence under Part 2 or 3, or
    - (iii) another interim management order,comes into force in relation to the house (or part of it) following the disposal of the appeal is later than the date on which the IMO would cease to have effect apart from this subsection,
- the IMO continues in force until that later date.
- [<sup>F80</sup>(9A) If—
- (a) the IMO was made under section 102(7A), and
  - (b) the date on which the FMO or another interim management order comes into force in relation to the house (or part of it) following the disposal of the appeal is later than the date on which the IMO would cease to have effect apart from this subsection,
- the IMO continues in force until that later date.]
- (10) If, on the application of the authority, the tribunal makes an order providing for the IMO to continue in force, pending the disposal of the appeal, until a date later than that on which the IMO would cease to have effect apart from this subsection, the IMO accordingly continues in force until that later date.
- (11) This section has effect subject to sections 111 and 112 (variation or revocation of orders by authority) and to the power of revocation exercisable by [<sup>F81</sup>the appropriate tribunal] on an appeal made under paragraph 24 or 28 of Schedule 6.

#### Textual Amendments

- F77** S. 105(7A)(7B) inserted (6.4.2018) by Housing and Planning Act 2016 (c. 22), s. 216(3), **Sch. 3 para. 4(2)**; S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F78** Word in s. 105(8) substituted (6.4.2018) by Housing and Planning Act 2016 (c. 22), s. 216(3), **Sch. 3 para. 4(3)**; S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F79** Words in s. 105(8)(b) substituted (1.7.2013) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1036), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 161** (with Sch. 3)
- F80** S. 105(9A) inserted (6.4.2018) by Housing and Planning Act 2016 (c. 22), s. 216(3), **Sch. 3 para. 4(4)**; S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F81** Words in s. 105(11) substituted (1.7.2013) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1036), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 161** (with Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

- I103** S. 105 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 105 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 105 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 105 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **106 Local housing authority’s duties once interim management order in force**

- (1) A local housing authority who have made an interim management order in respect of a house must comply with the following provisions as soon as practicable after the order has come into force.
- (2) The authority must first take any immediate steps which they consider to be necessary for the purpose of protecting the health, safety or welfare of persons occupying the house, or persons occupying or having an estate or interest in any premises in the vicinity.
- (3) The authority must also take such other steps as they consider appropriate with a view to the proper management of the house pending—
  - (a) the grant of a licence or the making of a final management order in respect of the house as mentioned in subsection (4) or (5), or
  - (b) the revocation of the interim management order as mentioned in subsection (5).
- (4) If the house would (but for the order being in force) be required to be licensed under Part 2 or 3 of this Act (see section 61(1) or 85(1)), the authority must, after considering all the circumstances of the case, decide to take one of the following courses of action—
  - (a) to grant a licence under that Part in respect of the house, or
  - (b) to make a final management order in respect of it under section 113(1).
- (5) If subsection (4) does not apply to the house, the authority must, after considering all the circumstances of the case, decide to take one of the following courses of action—
  - (a) to make a final management order in respect of the house under section 113(3), or
  - (b) to revoke the order under section 112 without taking any further action.
- (6) In the following provisions, namely—
  - (a) subsections (3) and (4), and
  - (b) section 101(3)(b),
 the reference to the grant of a licence under Part 2 or 3 in respect of the house includes a reference to serving a temporary exemption notice under section 62 or section 86 in respect of it (whether or not a notification is given under subsection (1) of that section).
- (7) For the avoidance of doubt, the authority’s duty under subsection (3) includes taking such steps as are necessary to ensure that, while the order is in force, reasonable provision is made for insurance of the house against destruction or damage by fire or other causes.

### **Commencement Information**

**I104** S. 106 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 106 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 106 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 106 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## **107 General effect of interim management orders**

- (1) This section applies while an interim management order is in force in relation to a house.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) The rights and powers conferred by subsection (3) are exercisable by the authority in performing their duties under section 106(1) to (3) in respect of the house.
- (3) The authority—
  - (a) have the right to possession of the house (subject to the rights of existing occupiers preserved by section 124(3));
  - (b) have the right to do (and authorise a manager or other person to do) in relation to the house anything which a person having an estate or interest in the house would (but for the order) be entitled to do;
  - (c) may create one or more of the following—
    - (i) an interest in the house which, as far as possible, has all the incidents of a leasehold, or
    - (ii) a right in the nature of a licence to occupy part of the house.
- (4) But the authority may not under subsection (3)(c) create any interest or right in the nature of a lease or licence unless consent in writing has been given by the person who (but for the order) would have power to create the lease or licence in question.
- (5) The authority—
  - (a) do not under this section acquire any estate or interest in the house, and
  - (b) accordingly are not entitled by virtue of this section to sell, lease, charge or make any other disposition of any such estate or interest;but, where the immediate landlord of the house or part of it (within the meaning of section 109) is a lessee under a lease of the house or part, the authority is to be treated (subject to paragraph (a)) as if they were the lessee instead.
- (6) Any enactment or rule of law relating to landlords and tenants or leases applies in relation to—
  - (a) a lease in relation to which the authority are to be treated as the lessee under subsection (5), or
  - (b) a lease to which the authority become a party under section 124(4),as if the authority were the legal owner of the premises (but this is subject to section 124(7) to (9)).
- (7) None of the following, namely—
  - (a) the authority, or
  - (b) any person authorised under subsection (3)(b),is liable to any person having an estate or interest in the house for anything done or omitted to be done in the performance (or intended performance) of the authority's duties under section 106(1) to (3) unless the act or omission is due to the negligence of the authority or any such person.
- (8) References in any enactment to housing accommodation provided or managed by a local housing authority do not include a house in relation to which an interim management order is in force.
- (9) An interim management order which has come into force is a local land charge.
- (10) The authority may apply to the Chief Land Registrar for the entry of an appropriate restriction in the register of title in respect of such an order.
- (11) In this section “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30)).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
 been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Commencement Information

**I105** S. 107 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 107 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 107 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 107 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 108 General effect of interim management orders: leases and licences granted by authority

- (1) This section applies in relation to any interest or right created by the authority under section 107(3)(c).
- (2) For the purposes of any enactment or rule of law—
  - (a) any interest created by the authority under section 107(3)(c)(i) is to be treated as if it were a legal lease, and
  - (b) any right created by the authority under section 107(3)(c)(ii) is to be treated as if it were a licence to occupy granted by the legal owner of the premises, despite the fact that the authority have no legal estate in the premises (see section 107(5)(a)).
- (3) Any enactment or rule of law relating to landlords and tenants or leases accordingly applies in relation to any interest created by the authority under section 107(3)(c)(i) as if the authority were the legal owner of the premises.
- (4) References to leases and licences—
  - (a) in this Chapter, and
  - (b) in any other enactment,
 accordingly include (where the context permits) interests and rights created by the authority under section 107(3)(c).
- (5) The preceding provisions of this section have effect subject to—
  - (a) section 124(7) to (9), and
  - (b) any provision to the contrary contained in an order made by the appropriate national authority.
- (6) In section 107(5)(b) the reference to leasing does not include the creation of interests under section 107(3)(c)(i).
- (7) In this section—
 

“enactment” has the meaning given by section 107(11);

“legal lease” means a term of years absolute (within section 1(1)(b) of the Law of Property Act 1925 (c. 20)).

#### Commencement Information

**I106** S. 108 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 108 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 108 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 108 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **109 General effect of interim management orders: immediate landlords, mortgagees etc.**

- (1) This section applies in relation to—
  - (a) immediate landlords, and
  - (b) other persons with an estate or interest in the house,while an interim management order is in force in relation to a house.
- (2) A person who is an immediate landlord of the house or a part of it—
  - (a) is not entitled to receive—
    - (i) any rents or other payments from persons occupying the house or part which are payable to the local housing authority by virtue of section 124(4), or
    - (ii) any rents or other payments from persons occupying the house or part which are payable to the authority by virtue of any leases or licences granted by them under section 107(3)(c);
  - (b) may not exercise any rights or powers with respect to the management of the house or part; and
  - (c) may not create any of the following—
    - (i) any leasehold interest in the house or part (other than a lease of a reversion), or
    - (ii) any licence or other right to occupy it.
- (3) However (subject to subsection (2)(c)) nothing in section 107 or this section affects the ability of a person having an estate or interest in the house to make any disposition of that estate or interest.
- (4) Nothing in section 107 or this section affects—
  - (a) the validity of any mortgage relating to the house or any rights or remedies available to the mortgagee under such a mortgage, or
  - (b) the validity of any lease of the house or part of it under which the immediate landlord is a lessee, or any superior lease, or (subject to section 107(5)) any rights or remedies available to the lessor under such a lease,except to the extent that any of those rights or remedies would prevent the local housing authority from exercising their power under section 107(3)(c).
- (5) In proceedings for the enforcement of any such rights or remedies the court may make such order as it thinks fit as regards the operation of the interim management order (including an order quashing it).
- (6) For the purposes of this Chapter, as it applies in relation to an interim management order, a person is an “immediate landlord” of the house or a part of it if—
  - (a) he is an owner or lessee of the house or part, and
  - (b) (but for the order) he would be entitled to receive the rents or other payments from persons occupying the house or part which are payable to the local housing authority by virtue of section 124(4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I107** S. 109 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 109 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 109 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 109 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 110 Financial arrangements while order is in force

- (1) This section applies to relevant expenditure of a local housing authority who have made an interim management order.
- (2) “Relevant expenditure” means expenditure reasonably incurred by the authority in connection with performing their duties under section 106(1) to (3) in respect of the house (including any premiums paid for insurance of the premises).
- (3) Rent or other payments which the authority have collected or recovered, by virtue of this Chapter, from persons occupying the house may be used by the authority to meet—
  - (a) relevant expenditure, and
  - (b) any amounts of compensation payable to a third party by virtue of a decision of the authority under section 128.
- (4) [<sup>F82</sup>If the interim management order is not made under section 102(7A),] the authority must pay to such relevant landlord, or to such relevant landlords in such proportions, as they consider appropriate—
  - (a) any amount of rent or other payments collected or recovered as mentioned in subsection (3) that remains after deductions to meet relevant expenditure and any amounts of compensation payable as mentioned in that subsection, and
  - (b) (where appropriate) interest on that amount at a reasonable rate fixed by the authority,
 and such payments are to be made at such intervals as the authority consider appropriate.
- (5) The interim management order may provide for—
  - (a) the rate of interest which is to apply for the purposes of paragraph (b) of subsection (4); and
  - (b) the intervals at which payments are to be made under that subsection.

Paragraph 24(3) of Schedule 6 enables an appeal to be brought where the order does not provide for both of those matters.

[<sup>F83</sup>(5A) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about how local authorities are to deal with any surplus in a case where the interim management order was made under section 102(7A).

- (5B) In subsection (5A) “surplus” means any amount of rent or other payments collected or recovered as mentioned in subsection (3) that remains after deductions to meet relevant expenditure and any amounts of compensation payable as mentioned in that subsection.]
- (6) The authority must—
  - (a) keep full accounts of their income and expenditure in respect of the house; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) afford to each relevant landlord, and to any other person who has an estate or interest in the house, all reasonable facilities for inspecting, taking copies of and verifying those accounts.
- (7) A relevant landlord may apply to [<sup>F84</sup>the appropriate tribunal] for an order—
- (a) declaring that an amount shown in the accounts as expenditure of the authority does not constitute expenditure reasonably incurred by the authority as mentioned in subsection (2);
  - (b) requiring the authority to make such financial adjustments (in the accounts and otherwise) as are necessary to reflect the tribunal’s declaration.
- (8) In this section—
- “expenditure” includes administrative costs;
  - “relevant landlord” means any person who is an immediate landlord of the house or part of it;
  - “rent or other payments” means rents or other payments payable under leases or licences or in respect of furniture within section 126(1).

#### Textual Amendments

- F82** Words in s. 110(4) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 5\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2\(b\)](#)
- F83** S. 110(5A)(5B) inserted (3.11.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 5\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2017/1052, reg. 2\(d\)](#)
- F84** Words in s. 110(7) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 162](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I108** S. 110 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 110 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 110 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 110 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Interim management orders: variation and revocation*

## **111 Variation of interim management orders**

- (1) The local housing authority may vary an interim management order if they consider it appropriate to do so.
- (2) A variation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 31 of Schedule 6 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).
- (3) The power to vary an order under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
  - (a) on an application made by a relevant person, or
  - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.
- (4) In this section “relevant person” means—
  - (a) any person who has an estate or interest in the house or part of it (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any other person who (but for the order) would be a person managing or having control of the house or part of it.

#### Commencement Information

**I109** S. 111 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 111 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 111 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 111 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 112 Revocation of interim management orders

- (1) The local housing authority may revoke an interim management order in the following cases—

- (a) if the order was made under section 102(2) or (3) and the house has ceased to be an HMO to which Part 2 applies or a Part 3 house (as the case may be);
- (b) if the order was made under section 102(2) or (3) and a licence granted by them in respect of the house is due to come into force under Part 2 or Part 3 on the revocation of the order;
- (c) if a final management order has been made by them in respect of the house so as to replace the order;
- (d) if in any other circumstances the authority consider it appropriate to revoke the order.

- (2) A revocation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 31 of Schedule 6 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to revoke is confirmed on appeal).

[<sup>F85</sup>(2A) An interim management order may not be revoked under this section if—

- (a) the immediate landlord is subject to a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016,
- (b) there is in force an agreement which, under section 108, has effect as a lease or licence granted by the authority, and
- (c) revoking the interim management order would cause the immediate landlord to breach the banning order because of the effect of section 130(2)(b).]

- (3) The power to revoke an order under this section is exercisable by the authority either—

- (a) on an application made by a relevant person, or
- (b) on the authority's own initiative.

- (4) In this section “relevant person” means—

- (a) any person who has an estate or interest in the house or part of it (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or
- (b) any other person who (but for the order) would be a person managing or having control of the house or part of it.

#### Textual Amendments

**F85** S. 112(2A) inserted (6.4.2018) by Housing and Planning Act 2016 (c. 22), s. 216(3), Sch. 3 para. 6; S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Commencement Information

**I110** S. 112 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 112 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 112 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 112 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Final management orders: making and operation of orders*

## 113 Making of final management orders

- (1) A local housing authority who have made an interim management order in respect of a house under [<sup>F86</sup>any provision of section 102 other than subsection (7A) of that section] (“the IMO”)—
  - (a) have a duty to make a final management order in respect of the house in a case within subsection (2), and
  - (b) have power to make such an order in a case within subsection (3).
- (2) The authority must make a final management order so as to replace the IMO as from its expiry date if—
  - (a) on that date the house would be required to be licensed under Part 2 or 3 of this Act (see section 61(1) or 85(1)), and
  - (b) the authority consider that they are unable to grant a licence under Part 2 or 3 in respect of the house that would replace the IMO as from that date.
- (3) The authority may make a final management order so as to replace the IMO as from its expiry date if—
  - (a) on that date the house will not be one that would be required to be licensed as mentioned in subsection (2)(a), and
  - (b) the authority consider that making the final management order is necessary for the purpose of protecting, on a long-term basis, the health, safety or welfare of persons occupying the house, or persons occupying or having an estate or interest in any premises in the vicinity.
- [<sup>F87</sup>(3A) A local housing authority who have made an interim management order under section 102(7A) may make a final management order so as to replace the interim management order as from its expiry date if the authority consider that making the final management order is necessary for the purpose of protecting, on a long-term basis, the health, safety or welfare of persons occupying the house, or persons occupying or having an estate or interest in any premises in the vicinity.]
- (4) A local housing authority who have made a final management order in respect of a house under [<sup>F88</sup>subsection (2), (3), (5) or (6) of] this section (“the existing order”)—
  - (a) have a duty to make a final management order in respect of the house in a case within subsection (5), and
  - (b) have power to make such an order in a case within subsection (6).
- (5) The authority must make a new final management order so as to replace the existing order as from its expiry date if—
  - (a) on that date the condition in subsection (2)(a) will be satisfied in relation to the house, and
  - (b) the authority consider that they are unable to grant a licence under Part 2 or 3 in respect of the house that would replace the existing order as from that date.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The authority may make a new final management order so as to replace the existing order as from its expiry date if—
- (a) on that date the condition in subsection (3)(a) will be satisfied in relation to the house, and
  - (b) the authority consider that making the new order is necessary for the purpose of protecting, on a long-term basis, the health, safety or welfare of persons within subsection (3)(b).
- [<sup>F89</sup>(6A) A local housing authority who have made a final management order in respect of a house under subsection (3A) or this subsection (“the existing order”) may make a new final management order so as to replace the existing order as from its expiry date if the authority consider that making the new order is necessary for the purpose of protecting, on a long-term basis, the health, safety or welfare of persons occupying the house, or persons occupying or having an estate or interest in any premises in the vicinity.]
- (7) The authority may make a final management order which is expressed not to apply to a part of the house that is occupied by a person who has an estate or interest in the whole of the house.

In relation to such an order, a reference in this Chapter to “the house” does not include the part so excluded (unless the context requires otherwise, such as where the reference is to the house as an HMO or a Part 3 house).

- (8) In this section “expiry date”, in relation to an interim or final management order, means—
- (a) where the order is revoked, the date as from which it is revoked, and
  - (b) otherwise the date on which the order ceases to have effect under section 105 or 114;
- and nothing in this section applies in relation to an interim or final management order which has been revoked on an appeal under Part 3 of Schedule 6.

#### Textual Amendments

- F86** Words in s. 113(1) substituted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(2\)](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F87** S. 113(3A) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(3\)](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F88** Words in s. 113(4) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(4\)](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)
- F89** S. 113(6A) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\), s. 216\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(5\)](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

- I111** S. 113 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 113 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 113 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 113 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 114 Operation of final management orders

- (1) This section deals with the time when a final management order comes into force or ceases to have effect.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) The order does not come into force until such time (if any) as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 27 of Schedule 6 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when order is confirmed on appeal).
  - (3) The order ceases to have effect at the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the date on which it comes into force, unless it ceases to have effect at some other time as mentioned below.
  - (4) If the order provides that it is to cease to have effect on a date falling before the end of that period, it accordingly ceases to have effect on that date.
- [<sup>F90</sup>(4A) An order under section 113(3A) or (6A) ceases to have effect (if it has not already ceased to have effect) when the relevant ban on letting housing in England ceases to have effect.
- (4B) In subsection (4A) “the relevant ban on letting housing in England” means the ban on letting contained in the banning order mentioned in section 102(7A).]
- (5) Subsections (6) [<sup>F91</sup>to] (7) apply where—
    - (a) a new final management order (“the new order”) has been made so as to replace the order (“the existing order”), but
    - (b) the new order has not come into force because of an appeal to [<sup>F92</sup>the appropriate tribunal] under paragraph 24 of Schedule 6 against the making of that order.
  - (6) If—
    - (a) the house would (but for the existing order being in force) be required to be licensed under Part 2 or 3 of this Act (see section 61(1) or 85(1)), and
    - (b) the date on which—
      - (i) the new order, or
      - (ii) any licence under Part 2 or 3, or
      - (iii) a temporary exemption notice under section 62 or 86,comes into force in relation to the house (or part of it) following the disposal of the appeal is later than the date on which the existing order would cease to have effect apart from this subsection,the existing order continues in force until that later date.
- [<sup>F93</sup>(6A) If—
  - (a) the existing order was made under section 113(3A) or (6A), and
  - (b) the date on which the new order comes into force in relation to the house (or part of it) following the disposal of the appeal is later than the date on which the existing order would cease to have effect apart from this subsection,the existing order continues in force until that later date.]
- (7) If, on the application of the authority, the tribunal makes an order providing for the existing order to continue in force, pending the disposal of the appeal, until a date later than that on which it would cease to have effect apart from this subsection, the existing order accordingly continues in force until that later date.
  - (8) This section has effect subject to sections 121 and 122 (variation or revocation of orders) and to the power of revocation exercisable by [<sup>F94</sup>the appropriate tribunal] on an appeal made under paragraph 24 or 28 of Schedule 6.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
 been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F90** S. 114(4A)(4B) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 8\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)
- F91** Word in s. 114(5) substituted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 8\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)
- F92** Words in s. 114(5)(b) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 163](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))
- F93** S. 114(6A) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 8\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)
- F94** Words in s. 114(8) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 163](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I112** S. 114 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 114 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 114 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 114 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 115 Local housing authority's duties once final management order in force

- (1) A local housing authority who have made a final management order in respect of a house must comply with the following provisions once the order has come into force.
- (2) The local housing authority must take such steps as they consider appropriate with a view to the proper management of the house in accordance with the management scheme contained in the order (see section 119).
- (3) The local housing authority must from time to time review—
  - (a) the operation of the order and in particular the management scheme contained in it, and
  - (b) whether keeping the order in force in relation to the house (with or without making any variations under section 121) is the best alternative available to them.
- (4) If on a review the authority consider that any variations should be made under section 121, they must proceed to make those variations.
- (5) If on a review the authority consider that either—
  - (a) granting a licence under Part 2 or 3 in respect of the house, or
  - (b) revoking the order under section 122 and taking no further action,
 is the best alternative available to them, the authority must grant such a licence or revoke the order (as the case may be).
- (6) For the avoidance of doubt, the authority's duty under subsection (2) includes taking such steps as are necessary to ensure that, while the order is in force, reasonable provision is made for insurance of the house against destruction or damage by fire or other causes.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Commencement Information

**II13** S. 115 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 115 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 115 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 115 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 116 General effect of final management orders

- (1) This section applies while a final management order is in force in relation to a house.
- (2) The rights and powers conferred by subsection (3) are exercisable by the authority in performing their duty under section 115(2) in respect of the house.
- (3) The authority—
  - (a) have the right to possession of the house (subject to the rights of existing and other occupiers preserved by section 124(3) and (6));
  - (b) have the right to do (and authorise a manager or other person to do) in relation to the house anything which a person having an estate or interest in the house would (but for the order) be entitled to do;
  - (c) may create one or more of the following—
    - (i) an interest in the house which, as far as possible, has all the incidents of a leasehold, or
    - (ii) a right in the nature of a licence to occupy part of the house.
- (4) The powers of the authority under subsection (3)(c) are restricted as follows—
  - (a) they may not create any interest or right in the nature of a lease or licence—
    - (i) which is for a fixed term expiring after the date on which the order is due to expire, or
    - (ii) (subject to paragraph (b)) which is terminable by notice to quit, or an equivalent notice, of more than 4 weeks,unless consent in writing has been given by the person who would (but for the order) have power to create the lease or licence in question;
  - (b) they may create an interest in the nature of an assured shorthold tenancy without any such consent so long as it is created before the beginning of the period of 6 months that ends with the date on which the order is due to expire.
- (5) The authority—
  - (a) do not under this section acquire any estate or interest in the house, and
  - (b) accordingly are not entitled by virtue of this section to sell, lease, charge or make any other disposition of any such estate or interest;but, where the immediate landlord of the house or part of it (within the meaning of section 118) is a lessee under a lease of the house or part, the authority is to be treated (subject to paragraph (a)) as if they were the lessee instead.
- (6) Any enactment or rule of law relating to landlords and tenants or leases applies in relation to—
  - (a) a lease in relation to which the authority are to be treated as the lessee under subsection (5), or
  - (b) a lease to which the authority become a party under section 124(4),

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

as if the authority were the legal owner of the premises (but this is subject to section 124(7) to (9)).

- (7) None of the following, namely—
- (a) the authority, or
  - (b) any person authorised under subsection (3)(b),
- is liable to any person having an estate or interest in the house for anything done or omitted to be done in the performance (or intended performance) of the authority's duty under section 115(2) unless the act or omission is due to the negligence of the authority or any such person.
- (8) References in any enactment to housing accommodation provided or managed by a local housing authority do not include a house in relation to which a final management order is in force.
- (9) A final management order which has come into force is a local land charge.
- (10) The authority may apply to the Chief Land Registrar for the entry of an appropriate restriction in the register in respect of such an order.
- (11) In this section “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30)).

#### Commencement Information

**II14** *S. 116* wholly in force at 16.6.2006; *s. 116* not in force at Royal Assent see *s. 270(4)(5)*; *s. 116* in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by *S.I. 2006/1060*, **art. 2(1)(a)** (with *Sch.*); *s. 116* in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by *S.I. 2006/1535*, **art. 2(a)** (with *Sch.*)

### 117 General effect of final management orders: leases and licences granted by authority

- (1) This section applies in relation to any interest or right created by the authority under section 116(3)(c).
- (2) For the purposes of any enactment or rule of law—
- (a) any interest created by the authority under section 116(3)(c)(i) is to be treated as if it were a legal lease, and
  - (b) any right created by the authority under section 116(3)(c)(ii) is to be treated as if it were a licence to occupy granted by the legal owner of the premises, despite the fact that the authority have no legal estate in the premises (see section 116(5)(a)).
- (3) Any enactment or rule of law relating to landlords and tenants or leases accordingly applies in relation to any interest created by the authority under section 116(3)(c)(i) as if the authority were the legal owner of the premises.
- (4) References to leases and licences—
- (a) in this Chapter, and
  - (b) in any other enactment,
- accordingly include (where the context permits) interests and rights created by the authority under section 116(3)(c).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) The preceding provisions of this section have effect subject to—
- (a) section 124(7) to (9), and
  - (b) any provision to the contrary contained in an order made by the appropriate national authority.
- (6) In section 116(5)(b) the reference to leasing does not include the creation of interests under section 116(3)(c)(i).
- (7) In this section—
- “enactment” has the meaning given by section 116(11);
  - “legal lease” means a term of years absolute (within section 1(1)(b) of the Law of Property Act 1925 (c. 20)).

#### Commencement Information

**I115** S. 117 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 117 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 117 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 117 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 118 General effect of final management orders: immediate landlords, mortgagees etc.

- (1) This section applies in relation to—
- (a) immediate landlords, and
  - (b) other persons with an estate or interest in the house, while a final management order is in force in relation to a house.
- (2) A person who is an immediate landlord of the house or a part of it—
- (a) is not entitled to receive—
    - (i) any rents or other payments from persons occupying the house or part which are payable to the local housing authority by virtue of section 124(4), or
    - (ii) any rents or other payments from persons occupying the house or part which are payable to the authority by virtue of any leases or licences granted by them under section 107(3)(c) or 116(3)(c);
  - (b) may not exercise any rights or powers with respect to the management of the house or part; and
  - (c) may not create any of the following—
    - (i) any leasehold interest in the house or part (other than a lease of a reversion), or
    - (ii) any licence or other right to occupy it.
- (3) However (subject to subsection (2)(c)) nothing in section 116 or this section affects the ability of a person having an estate or interest in the house to make any disposition of that estate or interest.
- (4) Nothing in section 116 or this section affects—
- (a) the validity of any mortgage relating to the house or any rights or remedies available to the mortgagee under such a mortgage, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the validity of any lease of the house or part of it under which the immediate landlord is a lessee, or any superior lease, or (subject to section 116(5)) any rights or remedies available to the lessor under such a lease, except to the extent that any of those rights or remedies would prevent the local housing authority from exercising their power under section 116(3)(c).
- (5) In proceedings for the enforcement of any such rights or remedies the court may make such order as it thinks fit as regards the operation of the final management order (including an order quashing it).
- (6) For the purposes of this Chapter, as it applies in relation to a final management order, a person is an “immediate landlord” of the house or a part of it if—
  - (a) he is an owner or lessee of the house or part, and
  - (b) (but for the order) he would be entitled to receive the rents or other payments from persons occupying the house or part which are payable to the authority by virtue of section 124(4).

#### **Commencement Information**

**II16** S. 118 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 118 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 118 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 118 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## **119 Management schemes and accounts**

- (1) A final management order must contain a management scheme.
- (2) A “management scheme” is a scheme setting out how the local housing authority are to carry out their duty under section 115(2) as respects the management of the house.
- (3) A management scheme is to be divided into two parts.
- (4) Part 1 of the scheme is to contain a plan giving details of the way in which the authority propose to manage the house, which must (in particular) include—
  - (a) details of any works that the authority intend to carry out in connection with the house;
  - (b) an estimate of the capital and other expenditure to be incurred by the authority in respect of the house while the order is in force;
  - (c) the amount of rent or other payments that the authority will seek to obtain having regard to the condition or expected condition of the house at any time while the order is in force;
  - (d) the amount of any compensation that is payable to a third party by virtue of a decision of the authority under section 128 in respect of any interference in consequence of the final management order with the rights of that person;
  - (e) provision as to the payment of any such compensation;
  - (f) provision as to the payment by the authority to a relevant landlord, from time to time, of amounts of rent or other payments that remain after the deduction of—
    - (i) relevant expenditure, and
    - (ii) any amounts of compensation payable as mentioned in paragraph (d);

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (g) provision as to the manner in which the authority are to pay to a relevant landlord, on the termination of the final management order, any amounts of rent or other payments that remain after the deduction of—
    - (i) relevant expenditure, and
    - (ii) any amounts of compensation payable as mentioned in paragraph (d);
  - (h) provision as to the manner in which the authority are to pay, on the termination of the final management order, any outstanding balance of compensation payable to a third party.
- [<sup>F95</sup>(4A) Subsection (4)(f) and (g) does not apply in a case where the final management order was made under section 113(3A) or (6A).
- (4B) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about how local authorities are to deal with any surplus in a case where the final management order was made under section 113(3A) or (6A).
- (4C) In subsection (4B) “surplus” means any amount of rent or other payments that the authority have collected or recovered, by virtue of this Chapter, that remains after deductions to meet relevant expenditure and any amounts of compensation payable as mentioned in subsection (2)(d).]
- (5) Part 1 of the scheme may also state—
- (a) the authority’s intentions as regards the use of rent or other payments to meet relevant expenditure;
  - (b) the authority’s intentions as regards the payment to a relevant landlord (where appropriate) of interest on amounts within subsection (4)(f) and (g);
  - (c) that section 129(2) or (4) is not to apply in relation to an interim or (as the case may be) final management order that immediately preceded the final management order, and that instead the authority intend to use any balance or amount such as is mentioned in that subsection to meet—
    - (i) relevant expenditure incurred during the currency of the final management order, and
    - (ii) any compensation that may become payable to a third party;
  - (d) that section 129(3) or (5) is not to apply in relation to an interim or (as the case may be) final management order that immediately preceded the final management order (“the order”), and that instead the authority intend to use rent or other payments collected during the currency of the order to reimburse the authority in respect of any deficit or amount such as is mentioned in that subsection;
  - (e) the authority’s intentions as regards the recovery from a relevant landlord, with or without interest, of any amount of relevant expenditure that cannot be reimbursed out of the total amount of rent or other payments.
- (6) Part 2 of the scheme is to describe in general terms how the authority intend to address the matters which caused them to make the final management order and may, for example, include—
- (a) descriptions of any steps that the authority intend to take to require persons occupying the house to comply with their obligations under any lease or licence or under the general law;
  - (b) descriptions of any repairs that are needed to the property and an explanation as to why those repairs are necessary.
- (7) The authority must—

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) keep full accounts of their income and expenditure in respect of the house; and
  - (b) afford to each relevant landlord, and to any other person who has an estate or interest in the house, all reasonable facilities for inspecting, taking copies of and verifying those accounts.
- (8) In this section—
- “relevant expenditure” means expenditure reasonably incurred by the authority in connection with performing their duties under section 115(2) in respect of the house (including any reasonable administrative costs and any premiums paid for insurance of the premises);
  - “relevant landlord” means any person who is an immediate landlord of the house or part of it;
  - “rent or other payments” means rent or other payments—
    - (a) which are payable under leases or licences or in respect of furniture within section 126(1), and
    - (b) which the authority have collected or recovered by virtue of this Chapter.
- (9) In the provisions of this Chapter relating to varying, revoking or appealing against decisions relating to a final management order, any reference to such an order includes (where the context permits) a reference to the management scheme contained in it.

#### Textual Amendments

**F95** S. 119(4A)-(4C) inserted (3.11.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 9](#); [S.I. 2017/1052](#), reg. 2(e)

#### Commencement Information

**I117** S. 119 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 119 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 119 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 119 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 120 Enforcement of management scheme by relevant landlord

- (1) An affected person may apply to [<sup>F96</sup>the appropriate tribunal] for an order requiring the local housing authority to manage the whole or part of a house in accordance with the management scheme contained in a final management order made in respect of the house.
- (2) On such an application the tribunal may, if it considers it appropriate to do so, make an order—
  - (a) requiring the local housing authority to manage the whole or part of the house in accordance with the management scheme, or
  - (b) revoking the final management order as from a date specified in the tribunal’s order.
- (3) An order under subsection (2) may—
  - (a) specify the steps which the authority are to take to manage the whole or part of the house in accordance with the management scheme,
  - (b) include provision varying the final management order,
  - (c) require the payment of money to an affected person by way of damages.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) In this section “affected person” means—
- (a) a relevant landlord (within the meaning of section 119), and
  - (b) any third party to whom compensation is payable by virtue of a decision of the authority under section 128.

#### Textual Amendments

**F96** Words in s. 120(1) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 164](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I118** S. 120 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 120 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 120 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 120 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Final management orders: variation and revocation*

## 121 Variation of final management orders

- (1) The local housing authority may vary a final management order if they consider it appropriate to do so.
- (2) A variation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 31 of Schedule 6 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).
- (3) The power to vary an order under this section is exercisable by the authority either—
  - (a) on an application made by a relevant person, or
  - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.
- (4) In this section “relevant person” means—
  - (a) any person who has an estate or interest in the house or part of it (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or
  - (b) any other person who (but for the order) would be a person managing or having control of the house or part of it.

#### Commencement Information

**I119** S. 121 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 121 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 121 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 121 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 122 Revocation of final management orders

- (1) The local housing authority may revoke a final management order in the following cases—
  - (a) if the order was made under section 113(2) or (5) and the house has ceased to be an HMO to which Part 2 applies or a Part 3 house (as the case may be);

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) if the order was made under section 113(2) or (5) and a licence granted by them in respect of the house is due to come into force under Part 2 or Part 3 as from the revocation of the order;
  - (c) if a further final management order has been made by them in respect of the house so as to replace the order;
  - (d) if in any other circumstances the authority consider it appropriate to revoke the order.
- (2) A revocation does not come into force until such time, if any, as is the operative time for the purposes of this subsection under paragraph 31 of Schedule 6 (time when period for appealing expires without an appeal being made or when decision to vary is confirmed on appeal).
- [<sup>F97</sup>(2A) A final management order may not be revoked under this section at a time when—
- (a) the immediate landlord is subject to a banning order under section 16 of the Housing and Planning Act 2016,
  - (b) there is in force an agreement which, under section 117, has effect as a lease or licence granted by the authority, and
  - (c) revoking the final management order would cause the immediate landlord to breach the banning order because of the effect of section 130(2)(b).]

(3) The power to revoke an order under this section is exercisable by the authority either—

    - (a) on an application made by a relevant person, or
    - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.

(4) In this section “relevant person” means—

    - (a) any person who has an estate or interest in the house or part of it (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less), or
    - (b) any other person who (but for the order) would be a person managing or having control of the house or part of it.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F97** S. 122(2A) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 10](#); [S.I. 2018/393](#), reg. 2(b)

#### **Commencement Information**

**I120** S. 122 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 122 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 122 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 122 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### *Interim and final management orders: procedure and appeals*

## **123 Procedural requirements and appeals**

Schedule 6 (which deals with procedural requirements relating to the making, variation or revocation of interim and final management orders and with appeals against decisions relating to such orders) has effect.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Commencement Information

**1121** S. 123 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 123 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 123 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 123 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### *Interim and final management orders: other general provisions*

#### **124 Effect of management orders: occupiers**

- (1) This section applies to existing and new occupiers of a house in relation to which an interim or final management order is in force.
- (2) In this section—
  - “existing occupier” means a person who, at the time when the order comes into force, either—
    - (a) (in the case of an HMO or a Part 3 house) is occupying part of the house and does not have an estate or interest in the whole of the house, or
    - (b) (in the case of a Part 3 house) is occupying the whole of the house,but is not a new occupier within subsection (6);
  - “new occupier” means a person who, at a time when the order is in force, is occupying the whole or part of the house under a lease or licence granted under section 107(3)(c) or 116(3)(c).
- (3) Sections 107 and 116 do not affect the rights or liabilities of an existing occupier under a lease or licence (whether in writing or not) under which he is occupying the whole or part of the house at the commencement date.
- (4) Where the lessor or licensor under such a lease or licence—
  - (a) has an estate or interest in the house, and
  - (b) is not an existing occupier,the lease or licence has effect while the order is in force as if the local housing authority were substituted in it for the lessor or licensor.
- (5) Such a lease continues to have effect, as far as possible, as a lease despite the fact that the rights of the local housing authority, as substituted for the lessor, do not amount to an estate in law in the premises.
- (6) Section 116 does not affect the rights or liabilities of a new occupier who, in the case of a final management order, is occupying the whole or part of the house at the time when the order comes into force.
- (7) The provisions which exclude local authority lettings from the Rent Acts, namely—
  - (a) sections 14 to 16 of the Rent Act 1977 (c. 42), and
  - (b) those sections as applied by Schedule 2 to the Rent (Agriculture) Act 1976 (c. 80) and section 5(2) to (4) of that Act,do not apply to a lease or agreement under which an existing or new occupier is occupying the whole or part of the house.
- (8) Section 1(2) of, and paragraph 12 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to, the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50) (which exclude local authority lettings from Part 1 of that Act) do not apply to

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

a lease or agreement under which an existing or new occupier is occupying the whole or part of the house.

(9) Nothing in this Chapter has the result that the authority are to be treated as the legal owner of any premises for the purposes of—

- (a) section 80 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (the landlord condition for secure tenancies); or
- (b) section 124 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (introductory tenancies).

(10) If, immediately before the coming into force of an interim or final management order, an existing occupier was occupying the whole or part of the house under—

- (a) a protected or statutory tenancy within the meaning of the Rent Act 1977 (c. 42),
- (b) a protected or statutory tenancy within the meaning of the Rent (Agriculture) Act 1976 (c. 80), or
- (c) an assured tenancy or assured agricultural occupancy within the meaning of Part 1 of the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50),

nothing in this Chapter prevents the continuance of that tenancy or occupancy or affects the continued operation of any of those Acts in relation to the tenancy or occupancy after the coming into force of the order.

(11) In this section “the commencement date” means the date on which the order came into force (or, if that order was preceded by one or more orders under this Chapter, the date when the first order came into force).

#### Commencement Information

**I122** S. 124 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 124 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 124 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 124 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 125 Effect of management orders: agreements and legal proceedings

(1) An agreement or instrument within subsection (2) has effect, while an interim or final management order is in force, as if any rights or liabilities of the immediate landlord under the agreement or instrument were instead rights or liabilities of the local housing authority.

(2) An agreement or instrument is within this subsection if—

- (a) it is effective on the commencement date,
- (b) one of the parties to it is a person who is the immediate landlord of the house or a part of the house (“the relevant premises”),
- (c) it relates to the house, whether in connection with—
  - (i) any management activities with respect to the relevant premises, or
  - (ii) the provision of any services or facilities for persons occupying those premises,

or otherwise,

- (d) it is specified for the purposes of this subsection in the order or falls within a description of agreements or instruments so specified, and
- (e) the authority serve a notice in writing on all the parties to it stating that subsection (1) is to apply to it.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) An agreement or instrument is not within subsection (2) if—
- (a) it is a lease within section 107(5) or 116(5), or
  - (b) it relates to any disposition by the immediate landlord which is not precluded by section 109(2) or 118(2), or
  - (c) it is within section 124(4).
- (4) Proceedings in respect of any cause of action within subsection (5) may, while an interim or final management order is in force, be instituted or continued by or against the local housing authority instead of by or against the immediate landlord.
- (5) A cause of action is within this subsection if—
- (a) it is a cause of action (of any nature) which accrued to or against the immediate landlord of the house or a part of the house before the commencement date,
  - (b) it relates to the house as mentioned in subsection (2)(c),
  - (c) it is specified for the purposes of this subsection in the order or falls within a description of causes of action so specified, and
  - (d) the authority serve a notice in writing on all interested parties stating that subsection (4) is to apply to it.
- (6) If, by virtue of this section, the authority become subject to any liability to pay damages in respect of anything done (or omitted to be done) before the commencement date by or on behalf of the immediate landlord of the house or a part of it, the immediate landlord is liable to reimburse to the authority an amount equal to the amount of the damages paid by them.
- (7) In this section—
- “agreement” includes arrangement;
  - “the commencement date” means the date on which the order comes into force (or, if that order was preceded by one or more orders under this Chapter, the date when the first order came into force);
  - “management activities” includes repair, maintenance, improvement and insurance.

#### Commencement Information

**I123** S. 125 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 125 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 125 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 125 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 126 Effect of management orders: furniture

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where, on the date on which an interim or final management order comes into force, there is furniture in the house which a person occupying the house has the right to use in consideration of periodical payments to a person who is an immediate landlord of the house or a part of it (whether the payments are included in the rent payable by the occupier or not).
- (2) The right to possession of the furniture against all persons other than the occupier vests in the local housing authority on that date and remains vested in the authority while the order is in force.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The local housing authority may renounce the right to possession of the furniture conferred by subsection (2) if—
  - (a) an application in writing has been made to them for the purpose by the person owning the furniture, and
  - (b) they renounce the right by notice in writing served on that person not less than two weeks before the notice takes effect.
- (4) If the authority’s right to possession of furniture conferred by subsection (2) is a right exercisable against more than one person interested in the furniture, any of those persons may apply to <sup>F98</sup>the appropriate tribunal] for an adjustment of their respective rights and liabilities as regards the furniture.
- (5) On such an application the tribunal may make an order for such an adjustment of rights and liabilities, either unconditionally or subject to such terms and conditions, as it considers appropriate.
- (6) The terms and conditions may, in particular, include terms and conditions about the payment of money by a party to the proceedings to another party to the proceedings by way of compensation, damages or otherwise.
- (7) In this section “furniture” includes fittings and other articles.

#### Textual Amendments

**F98** Words in s. 126(4) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 165](#) (with Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

**I124** S. 126 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 126 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 126 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); s. 126 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

## 127 Management orders: power to supply furniture

- (1) The local housing authority may supply the house to which an interim or final management order relates with such furniture as they consider to be required.
- (2) For the purposes of section 110 or a management scheme under section 119, any expenditure incurred by the authority under this section constitutes expenditure incurred by the authority in connection with performing their duty under section 106(3) or 115(2).
- (3) In this section “furniture” includes fittings and other articles.

#### Commencement Information

**I125** S. 127 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 127 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 127 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); s. 127 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 128 Compensation payable to third parties

- (1) If a third party requests them to do so at any time, the local housing authority must consider whether an amount by way of compensation should be paid to him in respect of any interference with his rights in consequence of an interim or final management order.
- (2) The authority must notify the third party of their decision as soon as practicable.
- (3) Where the local housing authority decide under subsection (1) that compensation ought to be paid to a third party in consequence of a final management order, they must vary the management scheme contained in the order so as to specify the amount of the compensation to be paid and to make provision as to its payment.

### Commencement Information

**I126** S. 128 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 128 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 128 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 128 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 129 Termination of management orders: financial arrangements

- (1) This section applies where an interim or final management order ceases to have effect for any reason.
- (2) If, on the termination date for an interim management order [<sup>F99</sup>that is not made under section 102(7A)], the total amount of rent or other payments collected or recovered as mentioned in section 110(3) exceeds the total amount of—
  - (a) the local housing authority's relevant expenditure, and
  - (b) any amounts of compensation payable to third parties by virtue of decisions of the authority under section 128,the authority must, as soon as practicable after the termination date, pay the balance to such relevant landlord, or to such relevant landlords in such proportions, as they consider appropriate.
- (3) If, on the termination date for an interim management order, the total amount of rent or other payments collected or recovered as mentioned in section 110(3) is less than the total amount of—
  - (a) the authority's relevant expenditure, and
  - (b) any amounts of compensation payable as mentioned in subsection (2)(b),the difference is recoverable by the authority from such relevant landlord, or such relevant landlords in such proportions, as they consider appropriate.
- (4) If, on the termination date for a final management order, any amount is payable to—
  - (a) a third party, or
  - (b) any relevant landlord in accordance with the management scheme under section 119,that amount must be paid to that person by the local housing authority in the manner provided by the scheme.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) If, on the termination date for a final management order, any amount is payable to the local housing authority in accordance with the management scheme, that amount is recoverable by the local housing authority—
- (a) from such relevant landlord, or
  - (b) from such relevant landlords in such proportions,
- as is provided by the scheme.
- (6) The provisions of any of subsections (2) to (5) do not, however, apply in relation to the order if—
- (a) the order is followed by a final management order, and
  - (b) the management scheme contained in that final management order provides for that subsection not to apply in relation to the order (see section 119(5)(c) and (d)).
- (7) Any sum recoverable by the authority under subsection (3) or (5) is, until recovered, a charge on the house.
- (8) The charge takes effect on the termination date for the order as a legal charge which is a local land charge.
- (9) For the purpose of enforcing the charge the authority have the same powers and remedies under the Law of Property Act 1925 (c. 20) and otherwise as if they were mortgagees by deed having powers of sale and lease, of accepting surrenders of leases and of appointing a receiver.
- (10) The power of appointing a receiver is exercisable at any time after the end of the period of one month beginning with the date on which the charge takes effect.
- (11) If the order is to be followed by a licence granted under Part 2 or 3 in respect of the house, the conditions contained in the licence may include a condition requiring the licence holder—
- (a) to repay to the authority any amount recoverable by them under subsection (3) or (5), and
  - (b) to do so in such instalments as are specified in the licence.
- (12) In this section—
- “relevant expenditure” has the same meaning as in section 110;
- “relevant landlord” means a person who was the immediate landlord of the house or part of it immediately before the termination date or his successor in title for the time being;
- “rent or other payments” means rents or other payments payable under leases or licences or in respect of furniture within section 126(1);
- “the termination date” means the date on which the order ceases to have effect.

---

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F99** Words in s. 129(2) inserted (6.4.2018) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 3 para. 11](#); S.I. 2018/393, reg. 2(b)

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I127** S. 129 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 129 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 129 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 129 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 130 Termination of management orders: leases, agreements and proceedings

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) an interim or final management order ceases to have effect for any reason, and
  - (b) the order is not immediately followed by a further order under this Chapter.
- (2) As from the termination date—
  - (a) a lease or licence in which the local housing authority was substituted for another party by virtue of section 124(4) has effect with the substitution of the original party, or his successor in title, for the authority; and
  - (b) an agreement which (in accordance with section 108 or 117) has effect as a lease or licence granted by the authority under section 107 or 116 has effect with the substitution of the relevant landlord for the authority.
- (3) If the relevant landlord is a lessee, nothing in a superior lease imposes liability on him or any superior lessee in respect of anything done before the termination date in pursuance of the terms of an agreement to which subsection (2)(b) applies.
- (4) If the condition in subsection (5) is met, any other agreement entered into by the authority in the performance of their duties under section 106(1) to (3) or 115(2) in respect of the house has effect, as from the termination date, with the substitution of the relevant landlord for the authority.
- (5) The condition is that the authority serve a notice on the other party or parties to the agreement stating that subsection (4) applies to the agreement.
- (6) If the condition in subsection (7) is met—
  - (a) any rights or liabilities that were rights or liabilities of the authority immediately before the termination date by virtue of any provision of this Chapter or under any agreement to which subsection (4) applies are rights or liabilities of the relevant landlord instead, and
  - (b) any proceedings instituted or continued by or against the authority by virtue of any such provision or agreement may be continued by or against the relevant landlord instead,
 as from the termination date.
- (7) The condition is that the authority serve a notice on all interested parties stating that subsection (6) applies to the rights or liabilities or (as the case may be) the proceedings.
- (8) If by virtue of this section a relevant landlord becomes subject to any liability to pay damages in respect of anything done (or omitted to be done) before the termination date by or on behalf of the authority, the authority are liable to reimburse to the relevant landlord an amount equal to the amount of the damages paid by him.
- (9) Where two or more persons are relevant landlords in relation to different parts of the house, any reference in this section to “the relevant landlord” is to be taken to refer to such one or more of them as is determined by agreement between them or (in default of agreement) by [F100 the appropriate tribunal] on an application made by any of them.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(10) This section applies to instruments as it applies to agreements.

(11) In this section—

“agreement” includes arrangement;

“relevant landlord” means a person who was the immediate landlord of the house immediately before the termination date or his successor in title for the time being;

“the termination date” means the date on which the order ceases to have effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F100** Words in s. 130(9) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 166](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I128** S. 130 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 130 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 130 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 130 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 131 Management orders: power of entry to carry out work

- (1) The right mentioned in subsection (2) is exercisable by the local housing authority, or any person authorised in writing by them, at any time when an interim or final management order is in force.
- (2) That right is the right at all reasonable times to enter any part of the house for the purpose of carrying out works, and is exercisable as against any person having an estate or interest in the house.
- (3) Where part of a house is excluded from the provisions of an interim or final management order under section 102(8) or 113(7), the right conferred by subsection (1) is exercisable as respects that part so far as is reasonably required for the purpose of carrying out works in the part of the house which is subject to the order.
- (4) If, after receiving reasonable notice of the intended action, any occupier of the whole or part of the house prevents any officer, employee, agent or contractor of the local housing authority from carrying out work in the house, a magistrates' court may order him to permit to be done on the premises anything which the authority consider to be necessary.
- (5) A person who fails to comply with an order of the court under subsection (4) commits an offence.
- (6) A person who commits an offence under subsection (5) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

#### Commencement Information

**I129** S. 131 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 131 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 131 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 131 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## CHAPTER 2

### INTERIM AND FINAL EMPTY DWELLING MANAGEMENT ORDERS

#### *Introductory*

#### **132 Empty dwelling management orders: introductory**

- (1) This Chapter deals with the making by a local housing authority of—
  - (a) an interim empty dwelling management order (an “interim EDMO”), or
  - (b) a final empty dwelling management order (a “final EDMO”),in respect of a dwelling.
- (2) An interim EDMO is an order made to enable a local housing authority, with the consent of the relevant proprietor, to take steps for the purpose of securing that a dwelling becomes and continues to be occupied.
- (3) A final EDMO is an order made, in succession to an interim EDMO or a previous final EDMO, for the purpose of securing that a dwelling is occupied.
- (4) In this Chapter—
  - (a) “dwelling” means—
    - (i) a building intended to be occupied as a separate dwelling, or
    - (ii) a part of a building intended to be occupied as a separate dwelling which may be entered otherwise than through any non-residential accommodation in the building;
  - (b) any reference to “the dwelling”, in relation to an interim EDMO or a final EDMO, is a reference to the dwelling to which the order relates;
  - (c) “relevant proprietor”, in relation to a dwelling, means—
    - (i) if the dwelling is let under one or more leases with an unexpired term of 7 years or more, the lessee under whichever of those leases has the shortest unexpired term; or
    - (ii) in any other case, the person who has the freehold estate in the dwelling;
  - (d) “third party”, in relation to a dwelling, means any person who has an estate or interest in the dwelling (other than the relevant proprietor and any person who is a tenant under a lease granted under paragraph 2(3)(c) or 10(3)(c) of Schedule 7); and
  - (e) any reference (however expressed) to rent or other payments in respect of occupation of a dwelling, includes any payments that the authority receive from persons in respect of unlawful occupation of the dwelling.
- (5) In subsection (4)(c), the reference to an unexpired term of 7 years or more of a lease of a dwelling is—
  - (a) in relation to a dwelling in respect of which the local housing authority are considering making an interim EDMO, a reference to the unexpired term of the lease at the time the authority begin taking steps under section 133(3),
  - (b) in relation to a dwelling in respect of which an interim EDMO has been made, a reference to the unexpired term of the lease at the time the application for authorisation to make the interim EDMO was made under subsection (1) of that section, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) in relation to a dwelling in respect of which a local housing authority are considering making or have made a final EDMO, a reference to the unexpired term of the lease at the time the application for authorisation to make the preceding interim EDMO was made under subsection (1) of that section.

“Preceding interim EDMO”, in relation to a final EDMO, means the interim EDMO that immediately preceded the final EDMO or, where there has been a succession of final EDMOs, the interim EDMO that immediately preceded the first of them.

- (6) Schedule 7 (which makes further provision regarding EDMOs) has effect.

#### Commencement Information

**I130** S. 132 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 132 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 132 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 132 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### *Interim empty dwelling management orders*

## 133 Making of interim EDMOs

- (1) A local housing authority may make an interim EDMO in respect of a dwelling if—
- (a) it is a dwelling to which this section applies, and
  - (b) on an application by the authority to [<sup>F101</sup>the appropriate tribunal], the tribunal by order authorises them under section 134 to make such an order, either in the terms of a draft order submitted by them or in those terms as varied by the tribunal.
- (2) This section applies to a dwelling if—
- (a) the dwelling is wholly unoccupied, and
  - (b) the relevant proprietor is not a public sector body.
- “Wholly unoccupied” means that no part is occupied, whether lawfully or unlawfully.
- (3) Before determining whether to make an application to [<sup>F102</sup>the appropriate tribunal] for an authorisation under section 134, the authority must make reasonable efforts—
- (a) to notify the relevant proprietor that they are considering making an interim EDMO in respect of the dwelling under this section, and
  - (b) to ascertain what steps (if any) he is taking, or is intending to take, to secure that the dwelling is occupied.
- (4) In determining whether to make an application to [<sup>F103</sup>the appropriate tribunal] for an authorisation under section 134, the authority must take into account the rights of the relevant proprietor of the dwelling and the interests of the wider community.
- (5) The authority may make an interim EDMO in respect of the dwelling despite any pending appeal against the order of the tribunal (but this is without prejudice to any order that may be made on the disposal of any such appeal).
- (6) An application to [<sup>F104</sup>the appropriate tribunal] under this section for authorisation to make an interim EDMO in respect of a dwelling may include an application for an order under paragraph 22 of Schedule 7 determining a lease or licence of the dwelling.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) In this section “public sector body” means a body mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (f) of paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 14.
- (8) Part 1 of Schedule 6 applies in relation to the making of an interim EDMO in respect of a dwelling as it applies in relation to the making of an interim management order in respect of a house, subject to the following modifications—
- (a) paragraph 7(2) does not apply;
  - (b) paragraph 7(4)(c) is to be read as referring instead to the date on which the order is to cease to have effect in accordance with paragraph 1(3) and (4) or 9(3) to (5) of Schedule 7;
  - (c) in paragraph 7(6)—
    - (i) paragraph (a) is to be read as referring instead to Part 4 of Schedule 7; and
    - (ii) paragraph (b) does not apply;
  - (d) paragraph 8(4) is to be read as defining “relevant person” as any person who, to the knowledge of the local housing authority, is a person having an estate or interest in the dwelling (other than a person who is a tenant under a lease granted under paragraph 2(3)(c) of Schedule 7).

#### Textual Amendments

- F101** Words in s. 133(1)(b) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 167** (with Sch. 3)
- F102** Words in s. 133(3) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 167** (with Sch. 3)
- F103** Words in s. 133(4) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 167** (with Sch. 3)
- F104** Words in s. 133(6) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 167** (with Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

- I131** S. 133 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 133 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 133 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 133 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

### 134 Authorisation to make interim EDMOs

- (1) [<sup>F105</sup>The appropriate tribunal] may authorise a local housing authority to make an interim EDMO in respect of a dwelling to which section 133 applies if the tribunal—
- (a) is satisfied as to the matters mentioned in subsection (2), and
  - (b) is not satisfied that the case falls within one of the prescribed exceptions.
- (2) The matters as to which the tribunal must be satisfied are—
- (a) that the dwelling has been wholly unoccupied for at least 6 months or such longer period as may be prescribed,
  - (b) that there is no reasonable prospect that the dwelling will become occupied in the near future,
  - (c) that, if an interim order is made, there is a reasonable prospect that the dwelling will become occupied,
  - (d) that the authority have complied with section 133(3), and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (e) that any prescribed requirements have been complied with.
- (3) In deciding whether to authorise a local housing authority to make an interim EDMO in respect of a dwelling, the tribunal must take into account—
- (a) the interests of the community, and
  - (b) the effect that the order will have on the rights of the relevant proprietor and may have on the rights of third parties.
- (4) On authorising a local housing authority to make an interim EDMO in respect of a dwelling, the tribunal may, if it thinks fit, make an order requiring the authority (if they make the EDMO) to pay to any third party specified in the order an amount of compensation in respect of any interference in consequence of the order with the rights of the third party.
- (5) The appropriate national authority may by order—
- (a) prescribe exceptions for the purposes of subsection (1)(b),
  - (b) prescribe a period of time for the purposes of subsection (2)(a), and
  - (c) prescribe requirements for the purposes of subsection (2)(e).
- (6) An order under subsection (5)(a) may, in particular, include exceptions in relation to—
- (a) dwellings that have been occupied solely or principally by the relevant proprietor who is at the material time temporarily resident elsewhere;
  - (b) dwellings that are holiday homes or that are otherwise occupied by the relevant proprietor or his guests on a temporary basis from time to time;
  - (c) dwellings undergoing repairs or renovation;
  - (d) dwellings in respect of which an application for planning permission or building control approval is outstanding;
  - (e) dwellings which are genuinely on the market for sale or letting;
  - (f) dwellings where the relevant proprietor has died not more than the prescribed number of months before the material time.
- (7) In this section—
- “building control approval” means approval for the carrying out of any works under building regulations;
- “planning permission” has the meaning given by section 336(1) of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (c. 8);
- “prescribed” means prescribed by an order under subsection (5);
- “wholly unoccupied” means that no part is occupied, whether lawfully or unlawfully.

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F105** Words in s. 134(1) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 168](#) (with Sch. 3)

---

#### Commencement Information

**I132** S. 134 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 134 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 134 in force for E. at 6.7.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch.); s. 134 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### 135 Local housing authority's duties once interim EDMO in force

- (1) A local housing authority who have made an interim EDMO in respect of a dwelling must comply with the following provisions as soon as practicable after the order has come into force (see paragraph 1 of Schedule 7).
- (2) The authority must take such steps as they consider appropriate for the purpose of securing that the dwelling becomes and continues to be occupied.
- (3) The authority must also take such other steps as they consider appropriate with a view to the proper management of the dwelling pending—
  - (a) the making of a final EDMO in respect of the dwelling under section 136, or
  - (b) the revocation of the interim EDMO.
- (4) If the local housing authority conclude that there are no steps which they could appropriately take under the order for the purpose of securing that the dwelling becomes occupied, the authority must either—
  - (a) make a final EDMO in respect of the dwelling under section 136, or
  - (b) revoke the order under paragraph 7 of Schedule 7 without taking any further action.
- (5) For the avoidance of doubt, the authority's duty under subsection (3) includes taking such steps as are necessary to ensure that, while the order is in force, reasonable provision is made for insurance of the dwelling against destruction or damage by fire or other causes.

#### Commencement Information

**I133** S. 135 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 135 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 135 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 135 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### *Final empty dwelling management orders*

### 136 Making of final EDMOs

- (1) A local housing authority may make a final EDMO to replace an interim EDMO made under section 133 if—
  - (a) they consider that, unless a final EDMO is made in respect of the dwelling, the dwelling is likely to become or remain unoccupied;
  - (b) where the dwelling is unoccupied, they have taken all such steps as it was appropriate for them to take under the interim EDMO with a view to securing the occupation of the dwelling.
- (2) A local housing authority may make a new final EDMO so as to replace a final EDMO made under this section if—
  - (a) they consider that unless a new final EDMO is made in respect of the dwelling, the dwelling is likely to become or remain unoccupied; and
  - (b) where the dwelling is unoccupied, they have taken all such steps as it was appropriate for them to take under the existing final EDMO with a view to securing the occupation of the dwelling.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In deciding whether to make a final EDMO in respect of a dwelling, the authority must take into account—
- (a) the interests of the community, and
  - (b) the effect that the order will have on the rights of the relevant proprietor and may have on the rights of third parties.
- (4) Before making a final EDMO under this section, the authority must consider whether compensation should be paid by them to any third party in respect of any interference in consequence of the order with the rights of the third party.
- (5) Part 1 of Schedule 6 applies in relation to the making of a final EDMO in respect of a dwelling as it applies in relation to the making of a final management order in respect of a house, subject to the following modifications—
- (a) paragraph 7(2) does not apply;
  - (b) paragraph 7(4)(c) is to be read as referring instead to the date on which the order is to cease to have effect in accordance with paragraph 1(3) and (4) or 9(3) to (5) of Schedule 7;
  - (c) in paragraph 7(6)—
    - (i) paragraph (a) is to be read as referring to Part 4 of Schedule 7, and
    - (ii) paragraph (b) is to be read as referring instead to paragraph 27(2) of Schedule 7;
  - (d) paragraph 7(6) in addition is to be read as requiring the notice under paragraph 7(5) also to contain—
    - (i) the decision of the authority as to whether to pay compensation to any third party,
    - (ii) the amount of any such compensation to be paid, and
    - (iii) information about the right of appeal against the decision under paragraph 34 of Schedule 7;
  - (e) paragraph 8(4) is to be read as defining “relevant person” as any person who, to the knowledge of the local housing authority, is a person having an estate or interest in the dwelling (other than a person who is a tenant under a lease granted under paragraph 2(3)(c) or 10(3)(c) of Schedule 7).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I134** S. 136 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 136 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 136 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 136 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### **137 Local housing authority’s duties once final EDMO in force**

- (1) A local housing authority who have made a final EDMO in respect of a dwelling must comply with the following provisions once the order has come into force (see paragraph 9 of Schedule 7).
- (2) The authority must take such steps as they consider appropriate for the purpose of securing that the dwelling is occupied.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) The authority must also take such other steps as they consider appropriate with a view to the proper management of the dwelling in accordance with the management scheme contained in the order (see paragraph 13 of Schedule 7).
- (4) The authority must from time to time review—
  - (a) the operation of the order and in particular the management scheme contained in it,
  - (b) whether, if the dwelling is unoccupied, there are any steps which they could appropriately take under the order for the purpose of securing that the dwelling becomes occupied, and
  - (c) whether keeping the order in force in relation to the dwelling (with or without making any variations under paragraph 15 of Schedule 7) is necessary to secure that the dwelling becomes or remains occupied.
- (5) If on a review the authority consider that any variations should be made under paragraph 15 of Schedule 7, they must proceed to make those variations.
- (6) If the dwelling is unoccupied and on a review the authority conclude that either—
  - (a) there are no steps which they could appropriately take as mentioned in subsection (4)(b), or
  - (b) keeping the order in force is not necessary as mentioned in subsection (4)(c),they must proceed to revoke the order.
- (7) For the avoidance of doubt, the authority's duty under subsection (3) includes taking such steps as are necessary to ensure that, while the order is in force, reasonable provision is made for insurance of the dwelling against destruction or damage by fire or other causes.

#### Commencement Information

**1135** S. 137 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 137 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 137 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 137 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### Compensation

#### 138 Compensation payable to third parties

- (1) A third party may, while an interim EDMO is in force in respect of a dwelling, apply to <sup>F106</sup>the appropriate tribunal for an order requiring the local housing authority to pay to him compensation in respect of any interference in consequence of the order with his rights in respect of the dwelling.
- (2) On such an application, the tribunal may, if it thinks fit, make an order requiring the authority to pay to the third party an amount by way of compensation in respect of any such interference.
- (3) If a third party requests them to do so at any time, the local housing authority must consider whether an amount by way of compensation should be paid to him in respect of any interference in consequence of a final EDMO with his rights.
- (4) The authority must notify the third party of their decision as soon as practicable.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) Where the local housing authority decide under subsection (3) that compensation ought to be paid to a third party, they must vary the management scheme contained in the order so as to specify the amount of the compensation to be paid and to make provision as to its payment.

#### Textual Amendments

**F106** Words in s. 138(1) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 169](#) (with Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

**I136** S. 138 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 138 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 138 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch.); s. 138 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

## CHAPTER 3

### OVERCROWDING NOTICES

#### 139 Service of overcrowding notices

- (1) This Chapter applies to any HMO—
  - (a) in relation to which no interim or final management order is in force; and
  - (b) which is not required to be licensed under Part 2.
- (2) The local housing authority may serve an overcrowding notice on one or more relevant persons if, having regard to the rooms available, it considers that an excessive number of persons is being, or is likely to be, accommodated in the HMO concerned.
- (3) The authority must, at least 7 days before serving an overcrowding notice—
  - (a) inform in writing every relevant person (whether or not the person on whom the authority is to serve the notice) of their intention to serve the notice; and
  - (b) ensure that, so far as is reasonably possible, every occupier of the HMO concerned is informed of the authority's intention.
- (4) The authority must also give the persons informed under subsection (3) an opportunity of making representations about the proposal to serve an overcrowding notice.
- (5) An overcrowding notice becomes operative, if no appeal is brought under section 143, at the end of the period of 21 days from the date of service of the notice.
- (6) If no appeal is brought under section 143, an overcrowding notice is final and conclusive as to matters which could have been raised on such an appeal.
- (7) A person who contravenes an overcrowding notice commits an offence and is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.
- (8) In proceedings for an offence under subsection (7) it is a defence that the person had a reasonable excuse for contravening the notice.
- (9) In this section “relevant person” means a person who is, to the knowledge of the local housing authority—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) a person having an estate or interest in the HMO concerned, or
- (b) a person managing or having control of it.

[<sup>F107</sup>(10) See also section 249A (financial penalties as alternative to prosecution for certain housing offences in England).

(11) If a local housing authority has imposed a financial penalty on a person under section 249A in respect of conduct amounting to an offence under this section the person may not be convicted of an offence under this section in respect of the conduct.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F107** S. 139(10)(11) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), **Sch. 9 para. 5**; S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(f)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C10** S. 139 modified (E.) (1.10.2007) by The Houses in [Multiple Occupation \(Certain Blocks of Flats\) \(Modifications to the Housing Act 2004 and Transitional Provisions for section 257 HMOs\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1904\)](#), {reg 11}

**C11** S. 139 modified (W.) (5.12.2007) by The Houses in [Multiple Occupation \(Certain Blocks of Flats\) \(Modifications to the Housing Act 2004 and Transitional Provisions for section 257 HMOs\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3231\)](#), **reg. 11**

#### Commencement Information

**I137** S. 139 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 139 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 139 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 139 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

## 140 Contents of overcrowding notices

- (1) An overcrowding notice must state in relation to each room in the HMO concerned—
  - (a) what the local housing authority consider to be the maximum number of persons by whom the room is suitable to be occupied as sleeping accommodation at any one time; or
  - (b) that the local housing authority consider that the room is unsuitable to be occupied as sleeping accommodation.
- (2) An overcrowding notice may specify special maxima applicable where some or all of the persons occupying a room are under such age as may be specified in the notice.
- (3) An overcrowding notice must contain—
  - (a) the requirement prescribed by section 141 (not to permit excessive number of persons to sleep in the house in multiple occupation); or
  - (b) the requirement prescribed by section 142 (not to admit new residents if number of persons is excessive).
- (4) The local housing authority may at any time—
  - (a) withdraw an overcrowding notice which has been served on any person and which contains the requirement prescribed by section 142, and
  - (b) serve on him instead an overcrowding notice containing the requirement prescribed by section 141.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
 been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I138** S. 140 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 140 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 140 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 140 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 141 Requirement as to overcrowding generally

- (1) The requirement prescribed by this section is that the person on whom the notice is served must refrain from—
  - (a) permitting a room to be occupied as sleeping accommodation otherwise than in accordance with the notice; or
  - (b) permitting persons to occupy the HMO as sleeping accommodation in such numbers that it is not possible to avoid persons of opposite sexes who are not living together as husband and wife sleeping in the same room.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b)—
  - (a) children under the age of 10 are to be disregarded; and
  - (b) it must be assumed that the persons occupying the HMO as sleeping accommodation sleep only in rooms for which a maximum is set by the notice and that the maximum set for each room is not exceeded.

#### Commencement Information

**I139** S. 141 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 141 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 141 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 141 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### 142 Requirement as to new residents

- (1) The requirement prescribed by this section is that the person on whom the notice is served must refrain from—
  - (a) permitting a room to be occupied by a new resident as sleeping accommodation otherwise than in accordance with the notice; or
  - (b) permitting a new resident to occupy any part of the HMO as sleeping accommodation if that is not possible without persons of opposite sexes who are not living together as husband and wife sleeping in the same room.
- (2) In subsection (1) “new resident” means a person who was not an occupier of the HMO immediately before the notice was served.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b)—
  - (a) children under the age of 10 are to be disregarded; and
  - (b) it must be assumed that the persons occupying any part of the HMO as sleeping accommodation sleep only in rooms for which a maximum is set by the notice and that the maximum set for each room is not exceeded.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Commencement Information

**I140** S. 142 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 142 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 142 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 142 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

## 143 Appeals against overcrowding notices

- (1) A person aggrieved by an overcrowding notice may appeal to <sup>F108</sup>the appropriate tribunal] within the period of 21 days beginning with the date of service of the notice.
- (2) Such an appeal—
  - (a) is to be by way of a re-hearing, but
  - (b) may be determined having regard to matters of which the authority were unaware.
- (3) On an appeal the tribunal may by order confirm, quash or vary the notice.
- (4) If an appeal is brought, the notice does not become operative until—
  - (a) a decision is given on the appeal which confirms the notice and the period within which an appeal to the <sup>F109</sup>Upper Tribunal] may be brought expires without any such appeal having been brought; or
  - (b) if an appeal is brought to the <sup>F109</sup>Upper Tribunal], a decision is given on the appeal which confirms the notice.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)—
  - (a) the withdrawal of an appeal has the same effect as a decision which confirms the notice appealed against; and
  - (b) references to a decision which confirms the notice are to a decision which confirms it with or without variation.
- (6) <sup>F110</sup>The appropriate tribunal] may allow an appeal to be made to it after the end of the period mentioned in subsection (1) if it is satisfied that there is good reason for the failure to appeal before the end of that period (and for any delay since then in applying for permission to appeal out of time).

### Textual Amendments

- F108** Words in s. 143(1) substituted (1.7.2013) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1036), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 170(a) (with Sch. 3)
- F109** Words in s. 143(4)(a)(b) substituted (1.6.2009) by Transfer of Tribunal Functions (Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1307), art. 5(1)(2), Sch. 1 para. 274 (with Sch. 5)
- F110** Words in s. 143(6) substituted (1.7.2013) by The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1036), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 170(b) (with Sch. 3)

### Commencement Information

**I141** S. 143 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 143 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 143 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 143 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 144 Revocation and variation of overcrowding notices

- (1) The local housing authority may at any time, on the application of a relevant person—
  - (a) revoke an overcrowding notice; or
  - (b) vary it so as to allow more people to be accommodated in the HMO concerned.
- (2) The applicant may appeal to <sup>[F111]</sup>the appropriate tribunal] if the local housing authority—
  - (a) refuse an application under subsection (1); or
  - (b) do not notify the applicant of their decision within the period of 35 days beginning with the making of the application (or within such further period as the applicant may in writing allow).
- (3) An appeal under subsection (2) must be made within—
  - (a) the period of 21 days beginning with the date when the applicant is notified by the authority of their decision to refuse the application, or
  - (b) the period of 21 days immediately following the end of the period (or further period) applying for the purposes of paragraph (b) of that subsection, as the case may be.
- (4) Section 143(2) applies to such an appeal as it applies to an appeal under that section.
- (5) On an appeal the tribunal may revoke the notice or vary it in any manner in which it might have been varied by the local housing authority.
- (6) <sup>[F112]</sup>The appropriate tribunal] may allow an appeal to be made to it after the end of the 21-day period mentioned in subsection (3)(a) or (b) if it is satisfied that there is good reason for the failure to appeal before the end of that period (and for any delay since then in applying for permission to appeal).
- (7) In this section “relevant person” means—
  - (a) any person who has an estate or interest in the HMO concerned, or
  - (b) any other person who is a person managing or having control of it.

### Textual Amendments

**F111** Words in s. 144(2) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 171(a)** (with Sch. 3)

**F112** Words in s. 144(6) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 171(b)** (with Sch. 3)

### Commencement Information

**I142** S. 144 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 144 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 144 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with Sch.); s. 144 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with Sch.)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## CHAPTER 4

### SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

#### 145 Supplementary provisions

- (1) The appropriate national authority may by regulations make such provision as it considers appropriate for supplementing the provisions of Chapter 1 or 2 in relation to cases where a local housing authority are to be treated as the lessee under a lease under—
  - (a) section 107(5) or 116(5), or
  - (b) paragraph 2(6) or 10(6) of Schedule 7.
- (2) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) as respects rights and liabilities in such cases of—
    - (i) the authority,
    - (ii) the person who (apart from the relevant provision mentioned in subsection (1)) is the lessee under the lease, or
    - (iii) other persons having an estate or interest in the premises demised under the lease;
  - (b) requiring the authority to give copies to the person mentioned in paragraph (a) (ii) of notices and other documents served on them in connection with the lease;
  - (c) for treating things done by or in relation to the authority as done by or in relation to that person, or vice versa.

#### Commencement Information

**I143** S. 145 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 145 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 145 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 145 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

#### 146 Interpretation and modification of this Part

- (1) In this Part—

“HMO” means a house in multiple occupation as defined by sections 254 to 259,

“Part 3 house” means a house to which Part 3 of this Act applies (see section 79(2)),

and any reference to an HMO or Part 3 house includes (where the context permits) a reference to any yard, garden, outhouses and appurtenances belonging to, or usually enjoyed with, it (or any part of it).
- (2) For the purposes of this Part “mortgage” includes a charge or lien, and “mortgagee” is to be read accordingly.
- (3) The appropriate national authority may by regulations provide for—
  - (a) any provision of this Part, or
  - (b) section 263 (in its operation for the purposes of any such provision),

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

to have effect in relation to a section 257 HMO with such modifications as are prescribed by the regulations.

- (4) A “section 257 HMO” is an HMO which is a converted block of flats to which section 257 applies.

#### Commencement Information

**I144** S. 146 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 146 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 146 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 146 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

#### 147 Index of defined expressions: Part 4

The following table shows where expressions used in this Part are defined or otherwise explained.

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Provision of this Act</i>
Appropriate national authority	Section 261(1)
Dwelling	Section 132(4)(a) and (b)
Final EDMO	Section 132(1)(b)
Final management order	Section 101(4)
Health	Section 2(5)
HMO	Section 146(1)
The house	Section 101(5) or 103(8)
Immediate landlord	Section 109(6) or 118(6)
Interim EDMO	Section 132(1)(a)
Interim management order	Section 101(3)
Landlord	Section 262(3)
Lease, lessee, etc.	Section 262(1) to (4)
Licence (to occupy premises)	Section 262(9)
Local housing authority	Section 261(2) to (5)
Modifications	Section 250(7)
Mortgage, mortgagee	Section 146(2)
Occupier (and related expressions)	Section 262(6)
Owner	Section 262(7)
Part 3 house	Section 146(1)
Person having control	Section 263(1) and (2)
Person having estate or interest	Section 262(8)
Person managing	Section 263(3)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Relevant proprietor	Section 132(4)(c) and (5)
Rent or other payments (in Chapter 2)	Section 132(4)(e)
Residential property tribunal	Section 229
Tenancy, tenant, etc.	Section 262(1) to (5)
Third party (in Chapter 1)	Section 101(7)
Third party (in Chapter 2)	Section 132(4)(d).

---

#### Commencement Information

**I145** S. 147 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 147 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 147 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2(1)(a) (with Sch.); s. 147 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2(a) (with Sch.)

### F113 PART 5

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F113** Pt. 5 repealed (15.1.2012) by Localism Act 2011 (c. 20), ss. 183(1), 240(1)(k), Sch. 25 Pt. 29

### PART 6

#### OTHER PROVISIONS ABOUT HOUSING

#### CHAPTER 1

#### SECURE TENANCIES

#### *Introductory tenancies*

#### **179 Extension of introductory tenancies**

- (1) Part 5 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (conduct of tenants) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 125(2) (trial period for introductory tenancy to be one year) for “subject as follows” substitute “ but this is subject to subsections (3) and (4) and to section 125A (extension of trial period by 6 months). ”
- (3) After section 125 insert—

#### **“125A Extension of trial period by 6 months**

- (1) If both of the following conditions are met in relation to an introductory tenancy, the trial period is extended by 6 months.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The first condition is that the landlord has served a notice of extension on the tenant at least 8 weeks before the original expiry date.
- (3) The second condition is that either—
  - (a) the tenant has not requested a review under section 125B in accordance with subsection (1) of that section, or
  - (b) if he has, the decision on the review was to confirm the landlord’s decision to extend the trial period.
- (4) A notice of extension is a notice—
  - (a) stating that the landlord has decided that the period for which the tenancy is to be an introductory tenancy should be extended by 6 months, and
  - (b) complying with subsection (5).
- (5) A notice of extension must—
  - (a) set out the reasons for the landlord’s decision, and
  - (b) inform the tenant of his right to request a review of the landlord’s decision and of the time within which such a request must be made.
- (6) In this section and section 125B “the original expiry date” means the last day of the period of one year that would apply as the trial period apart from this section.

### **125B Review of decision to extend trial period**

- (1) A request for review of the landlord’s decision that the trial period for an introductory tenancy should be extended under section 125A must be made before the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the day on which the notice of extension is served.
- (2) On a request being duly made to it, the landlord shall review its decision.
- (3) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations as to the procedure to be followed in connection with a review under this section.

Nothing in the following provisions affects the generality of this power.

- (4) Provision may be made by regulations—
  - (a) requiring the decision on review to be made by a person of appropriate seniority who was not involved in the original decision, and
  - (b) as to the circumstances in which the person concerned is entitled to an oral hearing, and whether and by whom he may be represented at such a hearing.
- (5) The landlord shall notify the tenant of the decision on the review.
 

If the decision is to confirm the original decision, the landlord shall also notify him of the reasons for the decision.
- (6) The review shall be carried out and the tenant notified before the original expiry date.”



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to any tenancy entered into before, or in pursuance of an agreement made before, the day on which this section comes into force.

#### Commencement Information

**I146** S. 179 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 179(3) in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 179 in force for E. at 6.6.2005 by S.I. 2005/1451, art. 2(a); s. 179 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by S.I. 2005/3237, art. 2(f)

#### *Right to buy: when exercisable*

### **180 Extension of qualifying period for right to buy**

- (1) In section 119(1) of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (qualifying period for right to buy) for “two” substitute “ five ”.
- (2) In subsection (2)(a) of section 129 of that Act (discount)—
- (a) for “two” substitute “ five ”; and
  - (b) for “32 per cent” substitute “ 35 per cent ”.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b) of that section—
- (a) for “two”, where it appears for the second time, substitute “ five ”; and
  - (b) for “44 per cent” substitute “ 50 per cent ”.
- (4) In subsection (2A)(b) of that section for “two” substitute “ five ”.
- (5) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to a secure tenancy—
- (a) if the tenancy was entered into before, or in pursuance of an agreement made before, the day on which this section comes into force, or
  - (b) if paragraph (a) does not apply but the tenant is a public sector tenant on that day and does not cease to be such a tenant at any time before serving a notice in respect of the tenancy under section 122 of that Act.
- (6) In subsection (5) “public sector tenant” has the same meaning as in Schedule 4 to that Act.

### **181 Exceptions to the right to buy: determination whether exception for dwelling-house suitable for elderly persons applies**

- (1) In Schedule 5 to the Housing Act 1985 (exceptions to the right to buy) paragraph 11 (single dwelling-house particularly suitable for elderly persons) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (4) (questions arising under paragraph 11 to be determined by the Secretary of State), for “the Secretary of State” (in both places) substitute “ the appropriate tribunal or authority ”.
- (3) After sub-paragraph (5) insert—
- “(5A) In this paragraph “the appropriate tribunal or authority” means—
    - (a) in relation to England, a residential property tribunal; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in relation to Wales, the Secretary of State.
- (5B) Section 231 of the Housing Act 2004 (appeals to <sup>F114</sup>Upper Tribunal] does not apply to any decision of a residential property tribunal under this paragraph.”
- (4) Subsections (5) and (6) apply to any application under paragraph 11(4) in respect of a dwelling-house in England which—
- (a) has been made to the Secretary of State before the day on which this section comes into force, and
  - (b) has not been determined by him before that day.
- (5) If the application was made more than 28 days before that day, it is to be determined by the Secretary of State as if the amendments made by this section had not come into force.
- (6) Otherwise—
- (a) the application is to be determined by <sup>F115</sup>the appropriate tribunal], and
  - (b) the Secretary of State must make all such arrangements as he considers necessary for the purpose of, or in connection with, enabling it to be so determined.

#### Textual Amendments

**F114** Words in s. 181(3) substituted (1.6.2009) by [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 1 para. 275** (with Sch. 5)

**F115** Words in s. 181(6)(a) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 172** (with Sch. 3)

#### Commencement Information

**I147** S. 181 partly in force; s. 181 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 181 in force for E. at 4.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1729](#), **art. 2(a)** (subject to [art. 3](#))

## 182 Exceptions to the right to buy: houses due to be demolished

- (1) In Schedule 5 to the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (exceptions to the right to buy) after paragraph 12 insert—

### “Dwelling-house due to be demolished within 24 months

- 13 (1) The right to buy does not arise if a final demolition notice is in force in respect of the dwelling-house.
- (2) A “final demolition notice” is a notice—
- (a) stating that the landlord intends to demolish the dwelling-house or (as the case may be) the building containing it (“the relevant premises”),
  - (b) setting out the reasons why the landlord intends to demolish the relevant premises,
  - (c) specifying—
    - (i) the date by which he intends to demolish those premises (“the proposed demolition date”), and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ii) the date when the notice will cease to be in force (unless extended under paragraph 15),
  - (d) stating that one of conditions A to C in paragraph 14 is satisfied in relation to the notice (specifying the condition concerned), and
  - (e) stating that the right to buy does not arise in respect of the dwelling-house while the notice is in force.
- (3) If, at the time when the notice is served, there is an existing claim to exercise the right to buy in respect of the dwelling-house, the notice shall (instead of complying with sub-paragraph (2)(e)) state—
  - (a) that that claim ceases to be effective on the notice coming into force, but
  - (b) that section 138C confers a right to compensation in respect of certain expenditure,and the notice shall also give details of that right to compensation and of how it may be exercised.
- (4) The proposed demolition date must fall within the period of 24 months beginning with the date of service of the notice on the tenant.
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph a final demolition notice is in force in respect of the dwelling-house concerned during the period of 24 months mentioned in sub-paragraph (4), but this is subject to—
  - (a) compliance with the conditions in sub-paragraphs (6) and (7) (in a case to which they apply), and
  - (b) the provisions of paragraph 15(1) to (7).
- (6) If—
  - (a) the dwelling-house is contained in a building which contains one or more other dwelling-houses, and
  - (b) the landlord intends to demolish the whole of the building,the landlord must have served a final demolition notice on the occupier of each of the dwelling-houses contained in it (whether addressed to him by name or just as “the occupier”).

An accidental omission to serve a final demolition notice on one or more occupiers does not prevent the condition in this sub-paragraph from being satisfied.
- (7) A notice stating that the landlord intends to demolish the relevant premises must have appeared—
  - (a) in a local or other newspaper circulating in the locality in which those premises are situated (other than one published by the landlord), and
  - (b) in any newspaper published by the landlord, and
  - (c) on the landlord’s website (if he has one).
- (8) The notice mentioned in sub-paragraph (7) must contain the following information—
  - (a) sufficient information to enable identification of the premises that the landlord intends to demolish;
  - (b) the reasons why the landlord intends to demolish those premises;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) the proposed demolition date;
  - (d) the date when any final demolition notice or notices relating to those premises will cease to be in force, unless extended or revoked under paragraph 15;
  - (e) that the right to buy will not arise in respect of those premises or (as the case may be) in respect of any dwelling-house contained in them;
  - (f) that there may be a right to compensation under section 138C in respect of certain expenditure incurred in respect of any existing claim.
- (9) In this paragraph and paragraphs 14 and 15 any reference to the landlord, in the context of a reference to an intention or decision on his part to demolish or not to demolish any premises, or of a reference to the acquisition or transfer of any premises, includes a reference to a superior landlord.
- 14 (1) A final demolition notice may only be served for the purposes of paragraph 13 if one of conditions A to C is satisfied in relation to the notice.
- (2) Condition A is that the proposed demolition of the dwelling-house does not form part of a scheme involving the demolition of other premises.
- (3) Condition B is that—
- (a) the proposed demolition of the dwelling-house does form part of a scheme involving the demolition of other premises, but
  - (b) none of those other premises needs to be acquired by the landlord in order for the landlord to be able to demolish them.
- (4) Condition C is that—
- (a) the proposed demolition of the dwelling-house does form part of a scheme involving the demolition of other premises, and
  - (b) one or more of those premises need to be acquired by the landlord in order for the landlord to be able to demolish them, but
  - (c) in each case arrangements for their acquisition are in place.
- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) arrangements for the acquisition of any premises are in place if—
- (a) an agreement under which the landlord is entitled to acquire the premises is in force, or
  - (b) a notice to treat has been given in respect of the premises under section 5 of the Compulsory Purchase Act 1965, or
  - (c) a vesting declaration has been made in respect of the premises under section 4 of the Compulsory Purchase (Vesting Declarations) Act 1981.
- (6) In this paragraph—
- “premises” means premises of any description;
  - “scheme” includes arrangements of any description.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- 15 (1) The Secretary of State may, on an application by the landlord, give a direction extending or further extending the period during which a final demolition notice is in force in respect of a dwelling-house.
- (2) A direction under sub-paragraph (1) may provide that any extension of that period is not to have effect unless the landlord complies with such requirements relating to the service of further notices as are specified in the direction.
- (3) A direction under sub-paragraph (1) may only be given at a time when the demolition notice is in force (whether by virtue of paragraph 13 or this paragraph).
- (4) If, while a final demolition notice is in force, the landlord decides not to demolish the dwelling-house in question, he must, as soon as is reasonably practicable, serve a notice (“a revocation notice”) on the tenant which informs him—
- (a) of the landlord’s decision, and
  - (b) that the demolition notice is revoked as from the date of service of the revocation notice.
- (5) If, while a final demolition notice is in force, it appears to the Secretary of State that the landlord has no intention of demolishing the dwelling-house in question, he may serve a notice (“a revocation notice”) on the tenant which informs him—
- (a) of the Secretary of State’s conclusion, and
  - (b) that the demolition notice is revoked as from the date of service of the revocation notice.
- Section 169 applies in relation to the Secretary of State’s power under this sub-paragraph as it applies in relation to his powers under the provisions mentioned in subsection (1) of that section.
- (6) But the Secretary of State may not serve a revocation notice unless he has previously served a notice on the landlord which informs him of the Secretary of State’s intention to serve the revocation notice.
- (7) Where a revocation notice is served under sub-paragraph (4) or (5), the demolition notice ceases to be in force as from the date of service of the revocation notice.
- (8) Once a final demolition notice has (for any reason) ceased to be in force in respect of a dwelling-house without it being demolished, no further final demolition notice may be served in respect of it during the period of 5 years following the time when the notice ceases to be in force, unless—
- (a) it is served with the consent of the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) it states that it is so served.
- (9) The Secretary of State’s consent under sub-paragraph (8) may be given subject to compliance with such conditions as he may specify.
- 16 (1) Any notice under paragraph 13 or 15 may be served on a person—
- (a) by delivering it to him, by leaving it at his proper address or by sending it by post to him at that address, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) if the person is a body corporate, by serving it in accordance with paragraph (a) on the secretary of the body.
- (2) For the purposes of this section and section 7 of the Interpretation Act 1978 (service of documents by post) the proper address of a person on whom a notice is to be served shall be—
  - (a) in the case of a body corporate or its secretary, that of the registered or principal office of the body, and
  - (b) in any other case, the last known address of that person.”
- (2) The amendment made by this section does not apply in any case where the tenant’s notice under section 122 of that Act (notice claiming to exercise right to buy) was served before the day on which this section comes into force.

### **183 Right to buy: claim suspended or terminated by demolition notice**

- (1) In section 138 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (duty of landlord to convey freehold or grant lease), after the subsection (2D) inserted by section 193 of this Act, insert—
  - “(2E) Subsection (1) also has effect subject to—
    - (a) section 138A(2) (operation of subsection (1) suspended while initial demolition notice is in force), and
    - (b) section 138B(2) (subsection (1) disapplied where final demolition notice is served).”
- (2) After section 138 of that Act insert—

#### **“138A Effect of initial demolition notice served before completion**

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) an initial demolition notice is served on a secure tenant under Schedule 5A, and
  - (b) the notice is served on the tenant before the landlord has made to him such a grant as is required by section 138(1) in respect of a claim by the tenant to exercise the right to buy.
- (2) In such a case the landlord is not bound to comply with section 138(1), in connection with any such claim by the tenant, so long as the initial demolition notice remains in force under Schedule 5A.
- (3) Section 138C provides a right to compensation in certain cases where this section applies.

#### **138B Effect of final demolition notice served before completion**

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) a secure tenant has claimed to exercise the right to buy, but
  - (b) before the landlord has made to the tenant such a grant as is required by section 138(1) in respect of the claim, a final demolition notice is served on the tenant under paragraph 13 of Schedule 5.
- (2) In such a case—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the tenant's claim ceases to be effective as from the time when the final demolition notice comes into force under that paragraph, and
  - (b) section 138(1) accordingly does not apply to the landlord, in connection with the tenant's claim, at any time after the notice comes into force.
- (3) Section 138C provides a right to compensation in certain cases where this section applies.

### **138C Compensation where demolition notice served**

- (1) This section applies where—
- (a) a secure tenant has claimed to exercise the right to buy,
  - (b) before the landlord has made to the tenant such a grant as is required by section 138(1) in respect of the claim, either an initial demolition notice is served on the tenant under Schedule 5A or a final demolition notice is served on him under paragraph 13 of Schedule 5, and
  - (c) the tenant's claim is established before that notice comes into force under Schedule 5A or paragraph 13 of Schedule 5 (as the case may be).
- (2) If, within the period of three months beginning with the date when the notice comes into force ("the operative date"), the tenant serves on the landlord a written notice claiming an amount of compensation under subsection (3), the landlord shall pay that amount to the tenant.
- (3) Compensation under this subsection is compensation in respect of expenditure reasonably incurred by the tenant before the operative date in respect of legal and other fees, and other professional costs and expenses, payable in connection with the exercise by him of the right to buy.
- (4) A notice under subsection (2) must be accompanied by receipts or other documents showing that the tenant incurred the expenditure in question."
- (3) After Schedule 5 to the Act insert, as Schedule 5A, the Schedule set out in Schedule 9 to this Act.
- (4) The amendments made by this section do not apply in any case where the tenant's notice under section 122 of the Act (notice claim to exercise right to buy) was served before the day on which this section comes into force.

### **184 Landlord's notice to complete**

- (1) Section 140 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (landlord's first notice to complete) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3) (notice not to be served earlier than twelve months after landlord's notice under section 125 or 146) for "twelve" substitute "three".
- (3) The amendment made by this section does not apply in any case where the tenant's notice under section 122 of that Act (notice claiming right to buy) was served before the day on which this section comes into force.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

*Right to buy: discounts*

**185 Repayment of discount: periods and amounts applicable**

- (1) Section 155 of the Housing Act 1985 (repayment of discount on early disposal) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) For subsections (2) and (3) substitute—
  - “(2) In the case of a conveyance or grant in pursuance of the right to buy, the covenant shall be to pay the landlord such sum (if any) as the landlord may demand in accordance with section 155A on the occasion of the first relevant disposal (other than an exempted disposal) which takes place within the period of five years beginning with the conveyance or grant.
  - (3) In the case of a conveyance or grant in pursuance of the right to acquire on rent to mortgage terms, the covenant shall be to pay the landlord such sum (if any) as the landlord may demand in accordance with section 155B on the occasion of the first relevant disposal (other than an exempted disposal) which takes place within the period of five years beginning with the making of the initial payment.”
- (3) In subsection (3A) (modifications where tenant has served operative notice of delay) for “three years” substitute “ five years ”.
- (4) After section 155 insert—

**“155A Amount of discount which may be demanded by landlord: right to buy**

- (1) For the purposes of the covenant mentioned in section 155(2), the landlord may demand such sum as he considers appropriate, up to and including the maximum amount specified in this section.
- (2) The maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord is a percentage of the price or premium paid for the first relevant disposal which is equal to the discount to which the secure tenant was entitled, where the discount is expressed as a percentage of the value which under section 127 was taken as the value of the dwelling-house at the relevant time.
- (3) But for each complete year which has elapsed after the conveyance or grant and before the disposal the maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord is reduced by one-fifth.
- (4) This section is subject to section 155C.

**155B Amount of discount which may be demanded by landlord: right to acquire on rent to mortgage terms**

- (1) For the purposes of the covenant mentioned in section 155(3), the landlord may demand such sum as he considers appropriate, up to and including the maximum amount specified in this section.
- (2) The maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord is the discount (if any) to which the tenant was entitled on the making of—



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the initial payment,
  - (b) any interim payment made before the disposal, or
  - (c) the final payment if so made,reduced, in each case, by one-fifth for each complete year which has elapsed after the making of the initial payment and before the disposal.”
- (5) The amendments made by this section do not apply in any case where the tenant’s notice under section 122 of the Act (notice claiming to exercise right to buy) was served before the day on which this section comes into force.
- (6) Subsection (7), however, applies in any such case if the first relevant disposal to which the covenant for repayment of discount applies takes place on or after the day on which this section comes into force.
- (7) In the following provisions—
  - (a) section 155(2) and (3) of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (as it has effect without the amendments made by this section), and
  - (b) any covenant for repayment of discount,any reference (however expressed) to a person being liable to pay an amount to the landlord on demand is to be read as a reference to his being liable to pay to the landlord so much of that amount (if any) as the landlord may demand.
- (8) In subsections (6) and (7) “covenant for repayment of discount” means the covenant contained in a conveyance or grant in accordance with section 155 of that Act.

**186 Repayment of discount: increase attributable to home improvements to be disregarded**

- (1) After section 155B of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (inserted by section 185 of this Act) insert—

**“155C Increase attributable to home improvements**

- (1) In calculating the maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord under section 155A, such amount (if any) of the price or premium paid for the disposal which is attributable to improvements made to the dwelling-house—
  - (a) by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made, and
  - (b) after the conveyance or grant and before the disposal,shall be disregarded.
- (2) The amount to be disregarded under this section shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties or determined by the district valuer.
- (3) The district valuer shall not be required by virtue of this section to make a determination for the purposes of this section unless—
  - (a) it is reasonably practicable for him to do so; and
  - (b) his reasonable costs in making the determination are paid by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made.
- (4) If the district valuer does not make a determination for the purposes of this section (and in default of an agreement), no amount is required to be disregarded under this section.”

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) In section 181 of that Act (jurisdiction of county court) for “and 158” substitute “ , 155C and 158 ”.

## 187 Deferred resale agreements

- (1) After section 163 of the Housing Act 1985 insert—

### **“163A Treatment of deferred resale agreements for purposes of section 155**

- (1) If a secure tenant or his successor in title enters into an agreement within subsection (3), any liability arising under the covenant required by section 155 shall be determined as if a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal had occurred at the appropriate time.
- (2) In subsection (1) “the appropriate time” means—
- (a) the time when the agreement is entered into, or
  - (b) if it was made before the beginning of the discount repayment period, immediately after the beginning of that period.
- (3) An agreement is within this subsection if it is an agreement between the secure tenant or his successor in title and any other person—
- (a) which is made (expressly or impliedly) in contemplation of, or in connection with, the tenant exercising, or having exercised, the right to buy,
  - (b) which is made before the end of the discount repayment period, and
  - (c) under which a relevant disposal (other than an exempted disposal) is or may be required to be made to any person after the end of that period.
- (4) Such an agreement is within subsection (3)—
- (a) whether or not the date on which the disposal is to take place is specified in the agreement, and
  - (b) whether or not any requirement to make the disposal is or may be made subject to the fulfilment of any condition.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order provide—
- (a) for subsection (1) to apply to agreements of any description specified in the order in addition to those within subsection (3);
  - (b) for subsection (1) not to apply to agreements of any description so specified to which it would otherwise apply.
- (6) An order under subsection (5)—
- (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and
  - (b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (7) In this section—
- “agreement” includes arrangement;
- “the discount repayment period” means the period of three or five years that applies for the purposes of section 155(2) or (3) (depending

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

on whether the tenant’s notice under section 122 was given before or on or after the date of the coming into force of section 185 of the Housing Act 2004).”

- (2) The amendment made by this section does not apply in relation to any agreement or arrangement made before the day on which this section comes into force.

**Commencement Information**

**I148** S. 187 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 187 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

*Right to buy: landlord’s right of first refusal*

**188 Right of first refusal for landlord etc.**

- (1) After section 156 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) insert—

**“156A Right of first refusal for landlord etc.**

- (1) A conveyance of the freehold or grant of a lease in pursuance of this Part shall contain the following covenant, which shall be binding on the secure tenant and his successors in title.
- This is subject to subsection (8).
- (2) The covenant shall be to the effect that, until the end of the period of ten years beginning with the conveyance or grant, there will be no relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal, unless the prescribed conditions have been satisfied in relation to that or a previous such disposal.
- (3) In subsection (2) “the prescribed conditions” means such conditions as are prescribed by regulations under this section at the time when the conveyance or grant is made.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations prescribe such conditions as he considers appropriate for and in connection with conferring on—
- (a) a landlord who has conveyed a freehold or granted a lease to a person (“the former tenant”) in pursuance of this Part, or
  - (b) such other person as is determined in accordance with the regulations, a right of first refusal to have a disposal within subsection (5) made to him for such consideration as is mentioned in section 158.
- (5) The disposals within this subsection are—
- (a) a reconveyance or conveyance of the dwelling-house; and
  - (b) a surrender or assignment of the lease.
- (6) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) for the former tenant to offer to make such a disposal to such person or persons as may be prescribed;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) for a prescribed recipient of such an offer to be able either to accept the offer or to nominate some other person as the person by whom the offer may be accepted;
  - (c) for the person who may be so nominated to be either a person of a prescribed description or a person whom the prescribed recipient considers, having regard to any prescribed matters, to be a more appropriate person to accept the offer;
  - (d) for a prescribed recipient making such a nomination to give a notification of the nomination to the person nominated, the former tenant and any other prescribed person;
  - (e) for authorising a nominated person to accept the offer and for determining which acceptance is to be effective where the offer is accepted by more than one person;
  - (f) for the period within which the offer may be accepted or within which any other prescribed step is to be, or may be, taken;
  - (g) for the circumstances in which the right of first refusal lapses (whether following the service of a notice to complete or otherwise) with the result that the former tenant is able to make a disposal on the open market;
  - (h) for the manner in which any offer, acceptance or notification is to be communicated.
- (7) In subsection (6) any reference to the former tenant is a reference to the former tenant or his successor in title.
- Nothing in that subsection affects the generality of subsection (4).
- (8) In a case to which section 157(1) applies—
- (a) the conveyance or grant may contain a covenant such as is mentioned in subsections (1) and (2) above instead of a covenant such as is mentioned in section 157(1), but
  - (b) it may do so only if the Secretary of State or, where the conveyance or grant is executed by a housing association within section 6A(3) or (4), the Relevant Authority consents.
- (9) Consent may be given in relation to—
- (a) a particular disposal, or
  - (b) disposals by a particular landlord or disposals by landlords generally, and may, in any case, be given subject to conditions.
- (10) Regulations under this section—
- (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and
  - (b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (11) The limitation imposed by a covenant within subsection (2) (whether the covenant is imposed in pursuance of subsection (1) or (8)) is a local land charge.
- (12) The Chief Land Registrar must enter in the register of title a restriction reflecting the limitation imposed by any such covenant.”

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) In section 157 of that Act (restriction on disposal of dwelling-houses in National Parks etc.)—
- (a) in subsection (1), after “the conveyance or grant may” insert “ (subject to section 156A(8) ”;
  - (b) in subsection (2), omit “, subject to subsection (4),”; and
  - (c) omit subsections (4) and (5) (which provide for a landlord’s right of first refusal).
- (3) In section 158 of that Act (consideration for conveyance or surrender under section 157)—
- (a) in the sidenote, for “reconveyance or surrender under section 157” substitute “ disposal under section 156A ”;
  - (b) for subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) The consideration for such a disposal as is mentioned in section 156A(4) shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties, or determined by the district valuer, as being the amount which is to be taken to be the value of the dwelling-house at the time when the offer is made (as determined in accordance with regulations under that section).”;
  - (c) in subsection (2), for “or surrendered” substitute “ , conveyed, surrendered or assigned ”;
  - (d) in subsection (3), for “the landlord accepts the offer,” substitute “ the offer is accepted in accordance with regulations under section 156A, ”; and
  - (e) in subsection (4), for “to reconvey or surrender” substitute “ (as determined in accordance with regulations under section 156A). ”
- (4) In section 162 of that Act (exempted disposals which end liability under covenants), after paragraph (a) insert—
- “(aa) the covenant required by section 156A (right of first refusal for landlord etc.) is not binding on the person to whom the disposal is made or any successor in title of his, and that covenant ceases to apply in relation to the property disposed of, and”.
- (5) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to a conveyance of the freehold or grant of a lease in pursuance of Part 5 of that Act if the notice under section 122 of the Act (tenant’s notice claiming to exercise right to buy) was served before the day on which this section comes into force.
- (6) Accordingly, nothing in this section affects—
- (a) the operation of a limitation contained in such a conveyance or grant in accordance with section 157(4) of that Act, or
  - (b) the operation, in relation to such a limitation, of section 157(6) (so far as it renders a disposal in breach of covenant void) or section 158 (consideration payable) of that Act.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I149** S. 188 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 188 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Right to buy: information*

#### **189 Information to help tenants decide whether to exercise right to buy etc.**

(1) After section 121 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) insert—

##### **“121AA Information to help tenants decide whether to exercise right to buy etc.**

- (1) Every body which lets dwelling-houses under secure tenancies shall prepare a document that contains information for its secure tenants about such matters as are specified in an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) The matters that may be so specified are matters which the Secretary of State considers that it would be desirable for secure tenants to have information about when considering whether to exercise the right to buy or the right to acquire on rent to mortgage terms.
- (3) The information contained in the document shall be restricted to information about the specified matters, and the information about those matters—
  - (a) shall be such as the body concerned considers appropriate, but
  - (b) shall be in a form which the body considers best suited to explaining those matters in simple terms.
- (4) Once a body has prepared the document required by subsection (1), it shall revise it as often as it considers necessary in order to ensure that the information contained in it—
  - (a) is kept up to date so far as is reasonably practicable, and
  - (b) reflects any changes in the matters for the time being specified in an order under this section.
- (5) An order under this section shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

##### **121B Provision of information**

- (1) This section sets out when the document prepared by a body under section 121AA is to be published or otherwise made available.
- (2) The body shall—
  - (a) publish the document (whether in its original or a revised form), and
  - (b) supply copies of it to the body’s secure tenants,
 at such times as may be prescribed by, and otherwise in accordance with, an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (3) The body shall make copies of the current version of the document available to be supplied, free of charge, to persons requesting them.
- (4) The copies must be made available for that purpose—
  - (a) at the body’s principal offices, and
  - (b) at such other places as it considers appropriate, at reasonable hours.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) The body shall take such steps as it considers appropriate to bring to the attention of its secure tenants the fact that copies of the current version of the document can be obtained free of charge from the places where, and at the times when, they are made available in accordance with subsection (4).
  - (6) In this section any reference to the current version of the document is to the version of the document that was last published by the body in accordance with subsection (2)(a).
  - (7) An order under this section shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.”
- (2) In section 104(1) of that Act (provision of information about tenancies), in paragraph (b) (information about Part 4 and Part 5), omit “and Part V (the right to buy)”.

#### Commencement Information

**I150** S. 189 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 189 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

PROSPECTIVE

#### *Right to buy: termination of rent to mortgage scheme*

### **190 Termination of rent to mortgage scheme**

- (1) Before section 143 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) insert—

#### **“142A Termination of the right to acquire on rent to mortgage terms**

- (1) As from the termination date, the right to acquire on rent to mortgage terms is not exercisable except in pursuance of a notice served under section 144 before that date.
  - (2) In this section “the termination date” means the date falling 8 months after the date of the passing of the Housing Act 2004.”
- (2) In section 143(1) of that Act after “sections” insert “ 142A, ”.
- (3) In section 144(1) of that Act for “A secure tenant” substitute “ Subject to section 142A, a secure tenant ”.

#### *Suspension of certain rights in connection with anti-social behaviour*

### **191 Secure tenancies: withholding of consent to mutual exchange**

- (1) In Schedule 3 to the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (grounds for withholding consent to assignment by way of exchange) after Ground 2 insert—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## “Ground 2A

Either—

- (a) a relevant order or suspended Ground 2 or 14 possession order is in force, or
- (b) an application is pending before any court for a relevant order, a demotion order or a Ground 2 or 14 possession order to be made,

in respect of the tenant or the proposed assignee or a person who is residing with either of them.

A “relevant order” means—

- an injunction under section 152 of the Housing Act 1996 (injunctions against anti-social behaviour);
- an injunction to which a power of arrest is attached by virtue of section 153 of that Act (other injunctions against anti-social behaviour);
- an injunction under section 153A, 153B or 153D of that Act (injunctions against anti-social behaviour on application of certain social landlords);
- an anti-social behaviour order under section 1 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998; or
- an injunction to which a power of arrest is attached by virtue of section 91 of the Anti-social Behaviour Act 2003.

A “demotion order” means a demotion order under section 82A of this Act or section 6A of the Housing Act 1988.

A “Ground 2 or 14 possession order” means an order for possession under Ground 2 in Schedule 2 to this Act or Ground 14 in Schedule 2 to the Housing Act 1988.

Where the tenancy of the tenant or the proposed assignee is a joint tenancy, any reference to that person includes (where the context permits) a reference to any of the joint tenants.”

- (2) The amendment made by this section applies in relation to applications for consent under section 92 of that Act (assignments by way of exchange) which are made on or after the day on which this section comes into force.

### Commencement Information

**I151** S. 191 wholly in force at 14.7.2005; s. 191 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 191 in force for E. at 6.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#); s. 191 in force for W. at 14.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1814](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

## 192 Right to buy: suspension by court order

- (1) In section 121 of the Housing Act 1985 (circumstances in which right to buy cannot be exercised), after subsection (2) insert—

“(3) The right to buy cannot be exercised at any time during the suspension period under an order made under section 121A in respect of the secure tenancy.”

- (2) After section 121 of that Act insert—



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### **“121A Order suspending right to buy because of anti-social behaviour**

- (1) The court may, on the application of the landlord under a secure tenancy, make a suspension order in respect of the tenancy.
- (2) A suspension order is an order providing that the right to buy may not be exercised in relation to the dwelling-house during such period as is specified in the order (“the suspension period”).
- (3) The court must not make a suspension order unless it is satisfied—
  - (a) that the tenant, or a person residing in or visiting the dwelling-house, has engaged or threatened to engage in conduct to which section 153A or 153B of the Housing Act 1996 applies (anti-social behaviour or use of premises for unlawful purposes), and
  - (b) that it is reasonable to make the order.
- (4) When deciding whether it is reasonable to make the order, the court must consider, in particular—
  - (a) whether it is desirable for the dwelling-house to be managed by the landlord during the suspension period; and
  - (b) where the conduct mentioned in subsection (3)(a) consists of conduct by a person which is capable of causing nuisance or annoyance, the effect that the conduct (or the threat of it) has had on other persons, or would have if repeated.
- (5) Where a suspension order is made—
  - (a) any existing claim to exercise the right to buy in relation to the dwelling-house ceases to be effective as from the beginning of the suspension period, and
  - (b) section 138(1) shall not apply to the landlord, in connection with such a claim, at any time after the beginning of that period, but
  - (c) the order does not affect the computation of any period in accordance with Schedule 4.
- (6) The court may, on the application of the landlord, make (on one or more occasions) a further order which extends the suspension period under the suspension order by such period as is specified in the further order.
- (7) The court must not make such a further order unless it is satisfied—
  - (a) that, since the making of the suspension order (or the last order under subsection (6)), the tenant, or a person residing in or visiting the dwelling-house, has engaged or threatened to engage in conduct to which section 153A or 153B of the Housing Act 1996 applies, and
  - (b) that it is reasonable to make the further order.
- (8) When deciding whether it is reasonable to make such a further order, the court must consider, in particular—
  - (a) whether it is desirable for the dwelling-house to be managed by the landlord during the further period of suspension; and
  - (b) where the conduct mentioned in subsection (7)(a) consists of conduct by a person which is capable of causing nuisance or annoyance, the

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

effect that the conduct (or the threat of it) has had on other persons, or would have if repeated.

(9) In this section any reference to the tenant under a secure tenancy is, in relation to a joint tenancy, a reference to any of the joint tenants.”

(3) Regulations under—

- (a) section 171C of that Act (modifications of Part 5 in relation to preserved right to buy), or
- (b) section 17 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (application of that Part in relation to right to acquire dwelling),

may make provision for continuing the effect of a suspension order where the secure tenancy in respect of which the order was made has been replaced by an assured tenancy.

#### Commencement Information

**I152** S. 192 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 192 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 192 in force for E. at 6.6.2005 by S.I. 2005/1451, art. 2(b); s. 192 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by S.I. 2005/3237, art. 2(g)

### 193 Right to buy: suspension of landlord’s obligation to complete

(1) In section 138 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (duty of landlord to convey freehold or grant lease) after subsection (2) insert—

“(2A) Subsection (2B) applies if an application is pending before any court—

- (a) for a demotion order or Ground 2 possession order to be made in respect of the tenant, or
- (b) for a suspension order to be made in respect of the tenancy.

(2B) The landlord is not bound to comply with subsection (1) until such time (if any) as the application is determined without—

- (a) a demotion order or an operative Ground 2 possession order being made in respect of the tenant, or
- (b) a suspension order being made in respect of the tenancy,

or the application is withdrawn.

(2C) For the purposes of subsection (2A) and (2B)—

“demotion order” means a demotion order under section 82A;

“Ground 2 possession order” means an order for possession under Ground 2 in Schedule 2;

“operative Ground 2 possession order” means an order made under that Ground which requires possession of the dwelling-house to be given up on a date specified in the order;

“suspension order” means a suspension order under section 121A.

(2D) Subsection (1) has effect subject to section 121A(5) (disapplication of subsection (1) where suspension order is made).”

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) The amendment made by this section does not apply in any case where the tenant's notice under section 122 of that Act (notice claiming to exercise right to buy) was served before the day on which this section comes into force.

#### Commencement Information

**I153** S. 193 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 193 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 193 in force for E. at 6.6.2005 by S.I. 2005/1451, art. 2(b); s. 193 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by S.I. 2005/3237, art. 2(g)

### 194 Disclosure of information as to orders etc. in respect of anti-social behaviour

- (1) Any person may disclose relevant information to a landlord under a secure tenancy if the information is disclosed for the purpose of enabling the landlord—
- (a) to decide whether either of the provisions of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) mentioned in subsection (2) can be invoked in relation to the tenant under the tenancy; or
  - (b) to take any appropriate action in relation to the tenant in reliance on either of those provisions.
- (2) The provisions are—
- (a) Ground 2A in Schedule 3 (withholding of consent to mutual exchange where order in force or application pending in connection with anti-social behaviour), and
  - (b) section 138(2B) (landlord's obligation to complete suspended while application pending in connection with such behaviour).
- (3) In this section—
- (a) "relevant information" means information relating to any order or application relevant for the purposes of either of the provisions mentioned in subsection (2), including (in particular) information identifying the person in respect of whom any such order or application has been made;
  - (b) "secure tenancy" has the meaning given by section 79 of the Housing Act 1985; and
  - (c) any reference to the tenant under a secure tenancy is, in relation to a joint tenancy, a reference to any of the joint tenants.
- (4) Regulations under—
- (a) section 171C of the Housing Act 1985 (modifications of Part 5 in relation to preserved right to buy), or
  - (b) section 17 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (application of that Part in relation to right to acquire dwelling),
- may make provision corresponding to subsections (1) to (3) of this section so far as those subsections relate to section 138(2B) of the Housing Act 1985.

#### Commencement Information

**I154** S. 194 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 194 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 194 in force for E. at 6.6.2005 by S.I. 2005/1451, art. 2(b); s. 194 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by S.I. 2005/3237, art. 2(g)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## CHAPTER 2

### DISPOSALS ATTRACTING DISCOUNTS OTHER THAN UNDER RIGHT TO BUY

#### *Disposals by local authorities*

#### **195 Repayment of discount: periods and amounts applicable**

- (1) Section 35 of the Housing Act 1985 (repayment of discount on early disposal) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) In subsection (2) for the words from “to pay to the authority” to the end of the subsection substitute “ to the following effect. ”
- (3) After subsection (2) insert—
  - “(3) The covenant shall be to pay to the authority such sum (if any) as the authority may demand in accordance with subsection (4) on the occasion of the first relevant disposal (other than an exempted disposal) which takes place within the period of five years beginning with the conveyance, grant or assignment.
  - (4) The authority may demand such sum as they consider appropriate, up to and including the maximum amount specified in this section.
  - (5) The maximum amount which may be demanded by the authority is a percentage of the price or premium paid for the first relevant disposal which is equal to the percentage discount given to the purchaser in respect of the disposal of the house under section 32.
  - (6) But for each complete year which has elapsed after the conveyance, grant or assignment and before the first relevant disposal the maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord is reduced by one-fifth.
  - (7) Subsections (4) to (6) are subject to section 35A.”
- (4) The amendments made by this section do not apply in any case where—
  - (a) the purchaser has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the authority, or
  - (b) the authority has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the purchaser,
 before the day on which this section comes into force.
- (5) Subsection (6), however, applies in any such case if the first relevant disposal by the purchaser to which the covenant for repayment of discount applies takes place on or after the day on which this section comes into force.
- (6) In the following provisions—
  - (a) section 35(2) of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (as it has effect without the amendments made by this section), and
  - (b) any covenant for repayment of discount,
 any reference (however expressed) to a person being liable to pay an amount to the authority on demand is to be read as a reference to his being liable to pay to the authority so much of that amount (if any) as the authority may demand.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (7) In subsections (5) and (6) “covenant for repayment of discount” means the covenant contained in a conveyance, grant or assignment in accordance with section 35 of that Act.

**196 Repayment of discount: increase attributable to home improvements to be disregarded**

After section 35 of the Housing Act 1985 insert—

**“35A Increase in value of house attributable to home improvements**

- (1) In calculating the maximum amount which may be demanded by the authority under section 35, such amount (if any) of the price or premium paid for the first relevant disposal which is attributable to improvements made to the house—
- (a) by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made, and
  - (b) after the conveyance, grant or assignment and before the disposal,
- shall be disregarded.
- (2) The amount to be disregarded under this section shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties or determined by the district valuer.
- (3) The district valuer shall not be required by virtue of this section to make a determination for the purposes of this section unless—
- (a) it is reasonably practicable for him to do so; and
  - (b) his reasonable costs in making the determination are paid by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made.
- (4) If the district valuer does not make a determination for the purposes of this section (and in default of an agreement), no amount is required to be disregarded under this section.”

**197 Local authority’s right of first refusal**

(1) After section 36 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) insert—

**“36A Right of first refusal for local authority**

- (1) This section applies where, on a disposal of a house under section 32, a discount is given to the purchaser by the local authority in accordance with a consent given by the Secretary of State under subsection (2) of that section; but this section does not apply in any such case if the consent so provides.
- (2) On the disposal the conveyance, grant or assignment shall contain the following covenant, which shall be binding on the purchaser and his successors in title.
- (3) The covenant shall be to the effect that, until the end of the period of ten years beginning with the conveyance, grant or assignment, there will be no relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal, unless the prescribed conditions have been satisfied in relation to that or a previous such disposal.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) In subsection (3) “the prescribed conditions” means such conditions as are prescribed by regulations under this section at the time when the conveyance, grant or assignment is made.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations prescribe such conditions as he considers appropriate for and in connection with conferring on—
- (a) a local authority which have made a disposal as mentioned in subsection (1), or
  - (b) such other person as is determined in accordance with the regulations, a right of first refusal to have a disposal within subsection (6) made to them or him for such consideration as is mentioned in section 36B.
- (6) The disposals within this subsection are—
- (a) a reconveyance or conveyance of the house; and
  - (b) a surrender or assignment of the lease.
- (7) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) for the purchaser to offer to make such a disposal to such person or persons as may be prescribed;
  - (b) for a prescribed recipient of such an offer to be able either to accept the offer or to nominate some other person as the person by whom the offer may be accepted;
  - (c) for the person who may be so nominated to be either a person of a prescribed description or a person whom the prescribed recipient considers, having regard to any prescribed matters, to be a more appropriate person to accept the offer;
  - (d) for a prescribed recipient making such a nomination to give a notification of the nomination to the person nominated, the purchaser and any other prescribed person;
  - (e) for authorising a nominated person to accept the offer and for determining which acceptance is to be effective where the offer is accepted by more than one person;
  - (f) for the period within which the offer may be accepted or within which any other prescribed step is to be, or may be, taken;
  - (g) for the circumstances in which the right of first refusal lapses (whether following the service of a notice to complete or otherwise) with the result that the purchaser is able to make a disposal on the open market;
  - (h) for the manner in which any offer, acceptance or notification is to be communicated.
- (8) In subsection (7) any reference to the purchaser is a reference to the purchaser or his successor in title.

Nothing in that subsection affects the generality of subsection (5).

- (9) Regulations under this section—
- (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and
  - (b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (10) The limitation imposed by a covenant within subsection (3) is a local land charge.
- (11) The Chief Land Registrar must enter in the register of title a restriction reflecting the limitation imposed by any such covenant.

### **36B Consideration payable for disposal under section 36A**

- (1) The consideration for a disposal made in respect of a right of first refusal as mentioned in section 36A(5) shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties, or determined by the district valuer, as being the amount which is to be taken to be the value of the house at the time when the offer is made (as determined in accordance with regulations under that section).
  - (2) That value shall be taken to be the price which, at that time, the interest to be reconveyed, conveyed, surrendered or assigned would realise if sold on the open market by a willing vendor, on the assumption that any liability under the covenant required by section 35 (repayment of discount on early disposal) would be discharged by the vendor.
  - (3) If the offer is accepted in accordance with regulations under section 36A, no payment shall be required in pursuance of any such covenant as is mentioned in subsection (2), but the consideration shall be reduced, subject to subsection (4), by such amount (if any) as, on a disposal made at the time the offer was made, being a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal, would fall to be paid under that covenant.
  - (4) Where there is a charge on the house having priority over the charge to secure payment of the sum due under the covenant mentioned in subsection (2), the consideration shall not be reduced under subsection (3) below the amount necessary to discharge the outstanding sum secured by the first-mentioned charge at the date of the offer (as determined in accordance with regulations under section 36A).”
- (2) In section 33(2) of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (covenants and conditions which may be imposed), after “But” insert “, subject to sections 36A and 37, ”.
  - (3) In section 37(1) of that Act (restriction on disposal of dwelling-houses in National Parks etc.), after “restriction on assignment)” insert “ or a covenant as mentioned in section 36A(3) (right of first refusal for local authority) ”.
  - (4) In section 41 of that Act (exempted disposals which end liability under covenants), after paragraph (a) insert—
    - “(aa) the covenant required by section 36A (right of first refusal for local authority) is not binding on the person to whom the disposal is made or any successor in title of his, and that covenant ceases to apply in relation to the property disposed of, and”.
  - (5) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to a disposal under section 32 of that Act if—
    - (a) the purchaser has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the authority, or
    - (b) the authority has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the purchaser,

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

before the day on which this section comes into force.

#### Commencement Information

**I155** S. 197 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 197 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

## 198 Deferred resale agreements

(1) After section 39 of the Housing Act 1985 insert—

### “39A Treatment of deferred resale agreements for purposes of section 35

- (1) If a purchaser or his successor in title enters into an agreement within subsection (3), any liability arising under the covenant required by section 35 shall be determined as if a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal had occurred at the appropriate time.
- (2) In subsection (1) “the appropriate time” means—
  - (a) the time when the agreement is entered into, or
  - (b) if it was made before the beginning of the discount repayment period, immediately after the beginning of that period.
- (3) An agreement is within this subsection if it is an agreement between the purchaser or his successor in title and any other person—
  - (a) which is made (expressly or impliedly) in contemplation of, or in connection with, a disposal to be made, or made, under section 32,
  - (b) which is made before the end of the discount repayment period, and
  - (c) under which a relevant disposal (other than an exempted disposal) is or may be required to be made to any person after the end of that period.
- (4) Such an agreement is within subsection (3)—
  - (a) whether or not the date on which the relevant disposal is to take place is specified in the agreement, and
  - (b) whether or not any requirement to make that disposal is or may be made subject to the fulfilment of any condition.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order provide—
  - (a) for subsection (1) to apply to agreements of any description specified in the order in addition to those within subsection (3);
  - (b) for subsection (1) not to apply to agreements of any description so specified to which it would otherwise apply.
- (6) An order under subsection (5)—
  - (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and
  - (b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (7) In this section—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“agreement” includes arrangement;

“the discount repayment period” means the period of 3 years that applies for the purposes of section 35(2) or the period of five years that applies for the purposes of section 35(3) (depending on whether an offer such as is mentioned in section 195(4) of the Housing Act 2004 was made before or on or after the coming into force of that section).”

- (2) The amendment made by this section does not apply in relation to any agreement or arrangement made before the day on which this section comes into force.

#### Commencement Information

**I156** S. 198 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 198 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

### *Disposals by registered social landlords*

## **199 Repayment of discount: periods and amounts payable**

- (1) For section 11 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) substitute—

### **“11 Covenant for repayment of discount on disposal**

- (1) Where on a disposal of a house by a registered social landlord, in accordance with a consent given by the Relevant Authority under section 9, a discount has been given to the purchaser, and the consent does not provide otherwise, the conveyance, grant or assignment shall contain a covenant binding on the purchaser and his successors in title to the following effect.
- (2) The covenant shall be to pay to the landlord such sum (if any) as the landlord may demand in accordance with subsection (3) on the occasion of the first relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal and which takes place within the period of five years beginning with the conveyance, grant or assignment.
- (3) The landlord may demand such sum as he considers appropriate, up to and including the maximum amount specified in this section.
- (4) The maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord is a percentage of the price or premium paid for the first relevant disposal which is equal to the percentage discount given to the purchaser in respect of the disposal of the house by the landlord.
- (5) But for each complete year which has elapsed after the conveyance, grant or assignment and before the first relevant disposal the maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord is reduced by one-fifth.
- (6) Subsections (3) to (5) are subject to section 11A.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **11A Increase in value of house attributable to home improvements to be disregarded**

- (1) In calculating the maximum amount which may be demanded by the landlord under section 11, such amount (if any) of the price or premium paid for the first relevant disposal which is attributable to improvements made to the house—
  - (a) by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made, and
  - (b) after the conveyance, grant or assignment and before the disposal, shall be disregarded.
- (2) The amount to be disregarded under this section shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties or determined by the district valuer.
- (3) The district valuer shall not be required by virtue of this section to make a determination for the purposes of this section unless—
  - (a) it is reasonably practicable for him to do so; and
  - (b) his reasonable costs in making the determination are paid by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made.
- (4) If the district valuer does not make a determination for the purposes of this section (and in default of an agreement), no amount is required to be disregarded under this section.

### **11B Liability to repay is a charge on the house**

- (1) The liability that may arise under the covenant required by section 11 is a charge on the house, taking effect as if it had been created by deed expressed to be by way of legal mortgage.
- (2) Where there is a relevant disposal which is an exempted disposal by virtue of section 15(4)(d) or (e) (compulsory disposal or disposal of yard, garden, etc.)—
  - (a) the covenant required by section 11 is not binding on the person to whom the disposal is made or any successor in title of his, and
  - (b) the covenant and the charge taking effect by virtue of this section cease to apply in relation to the property disposed of.”
- (2) In section 12, for “section 11” in each place where it occurs substitute “ section 11B ”.
- (3) The amendments made by this section do not apply in any case where—
  - (a) the purchaser has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the landlord, or
  - (b) the landlord has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the purchaser,
 before the day on which this section comes into force.
- (4) Subsection (5), however, applies in any such case if the first relevant disposal by the purchaser to which the covenant for repayment of discount applies takes place on or after the day on which this section comes into force.
- (5) In the following provisions—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) section 11(2) of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (as it has effect without the amendments made by this section), and
  - (b) any covenant for repayment of discount,
- any reference (however expressed) to a person being liable to pay an amount to the landlord on demand is to be read as a reference to his being liable to pay to the landlord so much of that amount (if any) as the landlord may demand.
- (6) In subsections (4) and (5) “covenant for repayment of discount” means the covenant contained in a conveyance, grant or assignment in accordance with section 11 of that Act.

## **200 Registered social landlord’s right of first refusal**

- (1) After section 12 of the Housing Act 1996 insert—

### **“12A Right of first refusal for registered social landlord**

- (1) Where on a disposal of a house by a registered social landlord, in accordance with a consent given by the Relevant Authority under section 9, a discount has been given to the purchaser, and the consent does not provide otherwise, the conveyance, grant or assignment shall contain the following covenant, which shall be binding on the purchaser and his successors in title.
- (2) The covenant shall be to the effect that, until the end of the period of ten years beginning with the conveyance, grant or assignment, there will be no relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal, unless the prescribed conditions have been satisfied in relation to that or a previous such disposal.
- (3) In subsection (2) “the prescribed conditions” means such conditions as are prescribed by regulations under this section at the time when the conveyance, grant or assignment is made.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations prescribe such conditions as he considers appropriate for and in connection with conferring on—
  - (a) a registered social landlord which has made a disposal as mentioned in subsection (1), or
  - (b) such other person as is determined in accordance with the regulations, a right of first refusal to have a disposal within subsection (5) made to him for such consideration as is mentioned in section 12B.
- (5) The disposals within this subsection are—
  - (a) a reconveyance or conveyance of the house; and
  - (b) a surrender or assignment of the lease.
- (6) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) for the purchaser to offer to make such a disposal to such person or persons as may be prescribed;
  - (b) for a prescribed recipient of such an offer to be able either to accept the offer or to nominate some other person as the person by whom the offer may be accepted;
  - (c) for the person who may be so nominated to be either a person of a prescribed description or a person whom the prescribed recipient

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- considers, having regard to any prescribed matters, to be a more appropriate person to accept the offer;
- (d) for a prescribed recipient making such a nomination to give a notification of the nomination to the person nominated, the purchaser and any other prescribed person;
  - (e) for authorising a nominated person to accept the offer and for determining which acceptance is to be effective where the offer is accepted by more than one person;
  - (f) for the period within which the offer may be accepted or within which any other prescribed step is to be, or may be, taken;
  - (g) for the circumstances in which the right of first refusal lapses (whether following the service of a notice to complete or otherwise) with the result that the purchaser is able to make a disposal on the open market;
  - (h) for the manner in which any offer, acceptance or notification is to be communicated.
- (7) In subsection (6) any reference to the purchaser is a reference to the purchaser or his successor in title.
- Nothing in that subsection affects the generality of subsection (4).
- (8) Regulations under this section—
- (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and
  - (b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (9) The limitation imposed by a covenant within subsection (2) is a local land charge.
- (10) The Chief Land Registrar must enter in the register of title a restriction reflecting the limitation imposed by any such covenant.
- (11) Where there is a relevant disposal which is an exempted disposal by virtue of section 15(4)(d) or (e) (compulsory disposal or disposal of yard, garden, &c)—
- (a) the covenant required by this section is not binding on the person to whom the disposal is made or any successor in title of his, and
  - (b) the covenant ceases to apply in relation to the property disposed of.

### **12B Consideration payable for disposal under section 12A**

- (1) The consideration for a disposal made in respect of a right of first refusal as mentioned in section 12A(4) shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties, or determined by the district valuer, as being the amount which is to be taken to be the value of the house at the time when the offer is made (as determined in accordance with regulations under that section).
- (2) That value shall be taken to be the price which, at that time, the interest to be reconveyed, conveyed, surrendered or assigned would realise if sold on the open market by a willing vendor, on the assumption that any liability under the covenant required by section 11 (repayment of discount on early disposal) would be discharged by the vendor.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) If the offer is accepted in accordance with regulations under section 12A, no payment shall be required in pursuance of any such covenant as is mentioned in subsection (2), but the consideration shall be reduced, subject to subsection (4), by such amount (if any) as, on a disposal made at the time the offer was made, being a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal, would fall to be paid under that covenant.
- (4) Where there is a charge on the house having priority over the charge to secure payment of the sum due under the covenant mentioned in subsection (2), the consideration shall not be reduced under subsection (3) below the amount necessary to discharge the outstanding sum secured by the first-mentioned charge at the date of the offer (as determined in accordance with regulations under section 12A).”
- (2) In section 13(1) of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (restriction on disposal of houses in National Parks, &c), after “restriction on assignment)” insert “ or a covenant as mentioned in section 12A(2) of this Act (right of first refusal for registered social landlord) ”.
- (3) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to a disposal under section 8 of that Act if—
- (a) the purchaser has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the landlord, or
  - (b) the landlord has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the purchaser,
- before the day on which this section comes into force.

#### Commencement Information

**I157** S. 200 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 200 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

## 201 Deferred resale agreements

- (1) After section 15 of the Housing Act 1996 insert—

### “15A Treatment of deferred resale agreements for purposes of section 11

- (1) If a purchaser or his successor in title enters into an agreement within subsection (3), any liability arising under the covenant required by section 11 shall be determined as if a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal had occurred at the appropriate time.
- (2) In subsection (1) “the appropriate time” means—
- (a) the time when the agreement is entered into, or
  - (b) if it was made before the beginning of the discount repayment period, immediately after the beginning of that period.
- (3) An agreement is within this subsection if it is an agreement between the purchaser or his successor in title and any other person—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) which is made (expressly or impliedly) in contemplation of, or in connection with, a disposal to be made, or made, by virtue of section 8,
  - (b) which is made before the end of the discount repayment period, and
  - (c) under which a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal is or may be required to be made to any person after the end of that period.
- (4) Such an agreement is within subsection (3)—
- (a) whether or not the date on which the relevant disposal is to take place is specified in the agreement, and
  - (b) whether or not any requirement to make that disposal is or may be made subject to the fulfilment of any condition.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order provide—
- (a) for subsection (1) to apply to agreements of any description specified in the order in addition to those within subsection (3);
  - (b) for subsection (1) not to apply to agreements of any description so specified to which it would otherwise apply.
- (6) An order under subsection (5)—
- (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and
  - (b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (7) In this section—
- “agreement” includes arrangement;
  - “the discount repayment period” means the period of three or five years that applies for the purposes of section 11(2) (depending on whether an offer such as is mentioned in section 199(3) of the Housing Act 2004 was made before or on or after the coming into force of that section).”
- (2) The amendment made by this section does not apply in relation to any agreement or arrangement made before the day on which this section comes into force.

**Commencement Information**

**I158** S. 201 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 201 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

**202 Right of assured tenant to acquire dwelling not affected by collective enfranchisement**

- (1) Section 16 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (right of assured tenant of registered social landlord to acquire dwelling) is amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) In subsection (3)(a) the reference to the freehold interest in the dwelling includes a reference to such an interest in the dwelling as is held by the

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

landlord under a lease granted in pursuance of paragraph 3 of Schedule 9 to the Leasehold Reform, Housing and Urban Development Act 1993 (mandatory leaseback to former freeholder on collective enfranchisement).”

- (3) The amendment made by subsection (2) applies in relation to the right conferred by section 16 as follows—
- (a) it applies for the purposes of any exercise of that right on or after the day on which this section comes into force, and
  - (b) it so applies whether the lease granted in pursuance of paragraph 3 of Schedule 9 to the Leasehold Reform, Housing and Urban Development Act 1993 was granted on or after that day or before it.

#### *Disposals by housing action trusts*

### **203 Repayment of discount: periods and amounts payable**

- (1) Schedule 11 to the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50) (provisions applicable to certain disposals of houses) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1(2) for the words from “to pay to the housing action trust” to the end of the sub-paragraph substitute “to the following effect.”
- (3) After paragraph 1(2) insert—
- “(3) The covenant shall be to pay to the housing action trust such sum (if any) as the trust may demand in accordance with sub-paragraph (4) on the occasion of the first relevant disposal (other than an exempted disposal) which takes place within the period of five years beginning with the conveyance, grant or assignment.
  - (4) The trust may demand such sum as it considers appropriate, up to and including the maximum amount specified in this paragraph.
  - (5) The maximum amount which may be demanded by the trust is a percentage of the price or premium paid for the first relevant disposal which is equal to the percentage discount given to the purchaser in respect of the disposal of the house under section 79.
  - (6) But for each complete year which has elapsed after the conveyance, grant or assignment and before the first relevant disposal the maximum amount which may be demanded by the trust is reduced by one-fifth.
  - (7) Sub-paragraphs (4) to (6) are subject to paragraph 1A.

#### **1A Increase in value of house attributable to home improvements**

- (1) In calculating the maximum amount which may be demanded by the housing action trust under paragraph 1, such amount (if any) of the price or premium paid for the first relevant disposal which is attributable to improvements made to the house—
- (a) by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made, and
  - (b) after the conveyance, grant or assignment and before the disposal, shall be disregarded.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The amount to be disregarded under this paragraph shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties or determined by the district valuer.
- (3) The district valuer shall not be required by virtue of this paragraph to make a determination for the purposes of this paragraph unless—
  - (a) it is reasonably practicable for him to do so; and
  - (b) his reasonable costs in making the determination are paid by the person by whom the disposal is, or is to be, made.
- (4) If the district valuer does not make a determination for the purposes of this paragraph (and in default of an agreement), no amount is required to be disregarded under this paragraph.”
- (4) The amendments made by this section do not apply in any case where—
  - (a) the purchaser has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the housing action trust, or
  - (b) the housing action trust has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the purchaser,
 before the day on which this section comes into force.
- (5) Subsection (6), however, applies in any such case if the first relevant disposal by the purchaser to which the covenant for repayment of discount applies takes place on or after the day on which this section comes into force.
- (6) In the following provisions—
  - (a) paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 11 to the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50) (as it has effect without the amendments made by this section), and
  - (b) any covenant for repayment of discount,
 any reference (however expressed) to a person being liable to pay an amount to the housing action trust on demand is to be read as a reference to his being liable to pay to the trust so much of that amount (if any) as the trust may demand.
- (7) In subsections (5) and (6) “covenant for repayment of discount” means the covenant contained in a conveyance, grant or assignment in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 11 to that Act.

## **204 Housing action trust’s right of first refusal**

- (1) After paragraph 2 of Schedule 11 to the Housing Act 1988 insert—

### **“Right of first refusal for housing action trust**

- 2A (1) This paragraph applies where, on the disposal of a house under section 79 of this Act, a discount is given to the purchaser by the housing action trust in accordance with a consent given by the Secretary of State under subsection (1) of that section and that consent does not exclude the application of this paragraph.
- (2) On the disposal, the conveyance, grant or assignment shall contain the following covenant, which shall be binding on the purchaser and his successors in title.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) The covenant shall be to the effect that, until the end of the period of ten years beginning with the conveyance, grant or assignment, there will be no relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal, unless the prescribed conditions have been satisfied in relation to that or a previous such disposal.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) “the prescribed conditions” means such conditions as are prescribed by regulations under this section at the time when the conveyance, grant or assignment is made.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations prescribe such conditions as he considers appropriate for and in connection with conferring on—
- (a) a housing action trust which has made a disposal as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1), or
  - (b) such other person as is determined in accordance with the regulations,
- a right of first refusal to have a disposal within sub-paragraph (6) made to him for such consideration as is mentioned in paragraph 2B.
- (6) The disposals within this sub-paragraph are—
- (a) a reconveyance or conveyance of the house; and
  - (b) a surrender or assignment of the lease.
- (7) Regulations under this paragraph may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) for the purchaser to offer to make such a disposal to such person or persons as may be prescribed;
  - (b) for a prescribed recipient of such an offer to be able either to accept the offer or to nominate some other person as the person by whom the offer may be accepted;
  - (c) for the person who may be so nominated to be either a person of a prescribed description or a person whom the prescribed recipient considers, having regard to any prescribed matters, to be a more appropriate person to accept the offer;
  - (d) for a prescribed recipient making such a nomination to give a notification of the nomination to the person nominated, the purchaser and any other prescribed person;
  - (e) for authorising a nominated person to accept the offer and for determining which acceptance is to be effective where the offer is accepted by more than one person;
  - (f) for the period within which the offer may be accepted or within which any other prescribed step is to be, or may be, taken;
  - (g) for the circumstances in which the right of first refusal lapses (whether following the service of a notice to complete or otherwise) with the result that the purchaser is able to make a disposal on the open market;
  - (h) for the manner in which any offer, acceptance or notification is to be communicated.
- (8) In sub-paragraph (7) any reference to the purchaser is a reference to the purchaser or his successor in title.

Nothing in that sub-paragraph affects the generality of sub-paragraph (5).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (9) Regulations under this paragraph—
  - (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and
  - (b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (10) The limitation imposed by a covenant within sub-paragraph (3) is a local land charge.
- (11) The Chief Land Registrar must enter in the register of title a restriction reflecting the limitation imposed by any such covenant.

### **Consideration payable for disposal under paragraph 2A**

- 2B
- (1) The consideration for a disposal made in respect of a right of first refusal as mentioned in paragraph 2A(5) shall be such amount as may be agreed between the parties, or determined by the district valuer, as being the amount which is to be taken to be the value of the house at the time when the offer is made (as determined in accordance with regulations under that paragraph).
  - (2) That value shall be taken to be the price which, at that time, the interest to be reconveyed, conveyed, surrendered or assigned would realise if sold on the open market by a willing vendor, on the assumption that any liability under the covenant required by paragraph 1 (repayment of discount on early disposal) would be discharged by the vendor.
  - (3) If the offer is accepted in accordance with regulations under paragraph 2A, no payment shall be required in pursuance of any such covenant as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), but the consideration shall be reduced, subject to sub-paragraph (4), by such amount (if any) as, on a disposal made at the time the offer was made, being a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal, would fall to be paid under that covenant.
  - (4) Where there is a charge on the house having priority over the charge to secure payment of the sum due under the covenant mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), the consideration shall not be reduced under sub-paragraph (3) below the amount necessary to discharge the outstanding sum secured by the first-mentioned charge at the date of the offer (as determined in accordance with regulations under paragraph 2A).”
- (2) In paragraph 6 of Schedule 11 to that Act (exempted disposals ending obligation under covenants), at the end of paragraph (b) insert “and
    - (c) the covenant required by paragraph 2A above is not binding on the person to whom the disposal is made or any successor in title of his; and
    - (d) that covenant ceases to apply in relation to the property disposed of.”
  - (3) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to a disposal under section 79 of that Act if—
    - (a) the purchaser has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the housing action trust, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the housing action trust has accepted an offer for the disposal of the house from the purchaser,  
before the day on which this section comes into force.

#### Commencement Information

**1159** S. 204 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 204 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

## 205 Deferred resale agreements

- (1) After paragraph 7 of Schedule 11 to the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50) insert—

### “Treatment of deferred resale agreements

- 8 (1) If a purchaser or his successor in title enters into an agreement within sub-paragraph (3), any liability arising under the covenant required by paragraph 1 shall be determined as if a relevant disposal which is not an exempted disposal had occurred at the appropriate time.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “the appropriate time” means—
- (a) the time when the agreement is entered into, or
  - (b) if it was made before the beginning of the discount repayment period, immediately after the beginning of that period.
- (3) An agreement is within this sub-paragraph if it is an agreement between the purchaser or his successor in title and any other person—
- (a) which is made (expressly or impliedly) in contemplation of, or in connection with, a disposal to be made, or made, under section 79,
  - (b) which is made before the end of the discount repayment period, and
  - (c) under which a relevant disposal (other than an exempted disposal) is or may be required to be made to any person after the end of that period.
- (4) Such an agreement is within sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) whether or not the date on which the relevant disposal is to take place is specified in the agreement, and
  - (b) whether or not any requirement to make that disposal is or may be made subject to the fulfilment of any condition.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order provide—
- (a) for sub-paragraph (1) to apply to agreements of any description specified in the order in addition to those within sub-paragraph (3);
  - (b) for sub-paragraph (1) not to apply to agreements of any description so specified to which it would otherwise apply.
- (6) An order under sub-paragraph (5)—
- (a) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(b) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

(7) In this paragraph—

“agreement” includes arrangement;

“the discount repayment period” means the period of 3 years that applies for the purposes of paragraph 1(2) or the period of five years that applies for the purposes of paragraph 1(3) (depending on whether an offer such as is mentioned in section 203(4) of the Housing Act 2004 was made before or on or after the coming into force of that section).”

(2) The amendment made by this section does not apply in relation to any agreement or arrangement made before the day on which this section comes into force.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I160** S. 205 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 205 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

## **CHAPTER 3**

### MOBILE HOMES

#### *Site agreements*

#### **206 Particulars of site agreements to be given in advance**

(1) For section 1 of the Mobile Homes Act 1983 (c. 34) (particulars of agreements between site owners and occupiers of mobile homes) substitute—

##### **“1 Particulars of agreements**

- (1) This Act applies to any agreement under which a person (“the occupier”) is entitled—
  - (a) to station a mobile home on land forming part of a protected site; and
  - (b) to occupy the mobile home as his only or main residence.
- (2) Before making an agreement to which this Act applies, the owner of the protected site (“the owner”) shall give to the proposed occupier under the agreement a written statement which—
  - (a) specifies the names and addresses of the parties;
  - (b) includes particulars of the land on which the proposed occupier is to be entitled to station the mobile home that are sufficient to identify that land;
  - (c) sets out the express terms to be contained in the agreement;
  - (d) sets out the terms to be implied by section 2(1) below; and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (e) complies with such other requirements as may be prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.
- (3) The written statement required by subsection (2) above must be given—
- (a) not later than 28 days before the date on which any agreement for the sale of the mobile home to the proposed occupier is made, or
  - (b) (if no such agreement is made before the making of the agreement to which this Act applies) not later than 28 days before the date on which the agreement to which this Act applies is made.
- (4) But if the proposed occupier consents in writing to that statement being given to him by a date (“the chosen date”) which is less than 28 days before the date mentioned in subsection (3)(a) or (b) above, the statement must be given to him not later than the chosen date.
- (5) If any express term—
- (a) is contained in an agreement to which this Act applies, but
  - (b) was not set out in a written statement given to the proposed occupier in accordance with subsections (2) to (4) above,
- the term is unenforceable by the owner or any person within section 3(1) below.
- This is subject to any order made by the court under section 2(3) below.
- (6) If the owner has failed to give the occupier a written statement in accordance with subsections (2) to (4) above, the occupier may, at any time after the making of the agreement, apply to the court for an order requiring the owner—
- (a) to give him a written statement which complies with paragraphs (a) to (e) of subsection (2) (read with any modifications necessary to reflect the fact that the agreement has been made), and
  - (b) to do so not later than such date as is specified in the order.
- (7) A statement required to be given to a person under this section may be either delivered to him personally or sent to him by post.
- (8) Any reference in this section to the making of an agreement to which this Act applies includes a reference to any variation of an agreement by virtue of which the agreement becomes one to which this Act applies.
- (9) Regulations under this section—
- (a) shall be made by statutory instrument;
  - (b) if made by the Secretary of State, shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament; and
  - (c) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case, including different provision for different areas.”
- (2) Section 2 of that Act (terms of agreements) is amended as follows—
- (a) in subsection (2), for “within six months of the giving of the statement under section 1(2) above” substitute “ within the relevant period ”; and
  - (b) for subsection (3) substitute—
- “(3) The court may, on the application of either party made within the relevant period, make an order—
  - (a) varying or deleting any express term of the agreement;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) in the case of any express term to which section 1(6) above applies, provide for the term to have full effect or to have such effect subject to any variation specified in the order.
- (3A) In subsections (2) and (3) above “the relevant period” means the period beginning with the date on which the agreement is made and ending—
- (a) six months after that date, or
  - (b) where a written statement relating to the agreement is given to the occupier after that date (whether or not in compliance with an order under section 1(6) above), six months after the date on which the statement is given;
- and section 1(8) above applies for the purposes of this subsection as it applies for the purposes of section 1.”
- (3) In section 5(1) of that Act (interpretation) insert at the appropriate place—
- ““the appropriate national authority” means—
- (a) in relation to England, the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) in relation to Wales, the National Assembly for Wales;”.
- (4) The amendments made by subsections (1) and (2) do not apply in relation to an agreement to which that Act applies where—
- (a) the agreement, or
  - (b) (if it becomes one to which that Act applies as the result of any variation of it) the variation in question,
- is made before the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which those subsections come into force.
- (5) The new section 1(9)(b) inserted by subsection (1) does not affect the continuing validity of any regulations made under section 1 of that Act before the passing of this Act.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I161** S. 206 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 206 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

## **207 Implied terms relating to termination of agreements or disposal of mobile homes**

- (1) Part 1 of Schedule 1 to the Mobile Homes Act 1983 (c. 34) (terms implied in site agreements) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 6 (termination by owner on ground of detrimental effect resulting from age and condition of mobile home)—
  - (a) omit “age and”; and
  - (b) after sub-paragraph (2) insert—
    - “(3) Sub-paragraphs (4) and (5) below apply if, on an application under sub-paragraph (1) above—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the court considers that, having regard to the present condition of the mobile home, paragraph (a) or (b) of that sub-paragraph applies to it, but
    - (b) it also considers that it would be reasonably practicable for particular repairs to be carried out on the mobile home that would result in neither of those paragraphs applying to it, and
    - (c) the occupier indicates that he intends to carry out those repairs.
  - (4) In such a case the court may make an order adjourning proceedings on the application for such period specified in the order as the court considers reasonable to allow the repairs to be carried out.  

The repairs must be set out in the order.
  - (5) If the court makes such an order, the application shall not be further proceeded with unless the court is satisfied that the specified period has expired without the repairs having been carried out.”
- (3) In paragraph 8 (sale of mobile home to person approved by owner)—
  - (a) after sub-paragraph (1) insert—
    - “(1A) The occupier may serve on the owner a request for the owner to approve a person for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above.
    - (1B) Where the owner receives such a request, he must, within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which he received the request—
      - (a) approve the person, unless it is reasonable for him not to do so, and
      - (b) serve on the occupier notice of his decision whether or not to approve the person.
    - (1C) A notice under sub-paragraph (1B) above must specify—
      - (a) if the approval is given subject to conditions, the conditions, and
      - (b) if the approval is withheld, the reasons for withholding it.
    - (1D) The giving of approval subject to any condition that is not a reasonable condition does not satisfy the requirement in sub-paragraph (1B)(a) above.
    - (1E) If the owner fails to notify the occupier as required by sub-paragraphs (1B) and (1C) above, the occupier may apply to the court for an order declaring that the person is approved for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above; and the court may make such an order if it thinks fit.
    - (1F) It is for the owner—
      - (a) if he served a notice as mentioned in sub-paragraphs (1B) and (1C) and the question arises whether he served the notice within the required period of 28 days, to show that he did;
      - (b) if he gave his approval subject to any condition and the question arises whether the condition was a reasonable condition, to show that it was;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) if he did not give his approval and the question arises whether it was reasonable for him not to do so, to show that it was reasonable.
  - (1G) A request or notice under this paragraph—
    - (a) must be in writing, and
    - (b) may be served by post.”;
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (2) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “ the appropriate national authority ”; and
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (3)(a) after “which” insert “ (if made by the Secretary of State) ”.
- (4) After the existing provisions of paragraph 9 (gift of mobile home to person approved by owner), which become sub-paragraph (1), insert—
- “(2) Sub-paragraphs (1A) to (1G) of paragraph 8 above shall apply in relation to the approval of a person for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above as they apply in relation to the approval of a person for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph.”
- (5) After Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Mobile Homes Act 1983 (c. 34) insert—

### “PART 3

#### SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

##### **Duty to forward requests under paragraph 8 or 9 of Part 1**

- 1 (1) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) a request by the occupier for the owner to approve a person for the purposes of paragraph 8(1) of Part 1 (see paragraph 8(1A)), or
  - (b) a request by the occupier for the owner to approve a person for the purposes of paragraph 9(1) of Part 1 (see paragraph 8(1A) as applied by paragraph 9(2)).
- (2) If a person (“the recipient”) receives such a request and he—
- (a) though not the owner, has an estate or interest in the protected site, and
  - (b) believes that another person is the owner (and that the other person has not received such a request),
- the recipient owes a duty to the occupier to take such steps as are reasonable to secure that the other person receives the request within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the recipient receives it.
- (3) In paragraph 8(1B) of Part 1 of this Schedule (as it applies to any request within sub-paragraph (1) above) any reference to the owner receiving such a request includes a reference to his receiving it in accordance with sub-paragraph (2) above.



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### **Action for breach of duty under paragraph 1**

- 2 (1) A claim that a person has broken the duty under paragraph 1(2) above may be made the subject of civil proceedings in like manner as any other claim in tort for breach of statutory duty.
- (2) The right conferred by sub-paragraph (1) is in addition to any right to bring proceedings, in respect of a breach of any implied term having effect by virtue of paragraph 8 or 9 of Part 1 of this Schedule, against a person bound by that term.”
- (6) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to an agreement to which the Mobile Homes Act 1983 applies that was made before the day on which this section comes into force (“the appointed day”), as well as in relation to one made on or after that day.

Any reference in this subsection to the making of an agreement to which that Act applies includes a reference to any variation of an agreement by virtue of which the agreement becomes one to which that Act applies.

- (7) However—
- (a) the amendments made by subsection (2) do not apply in relation to any application made before the appointed day for the purposes of paragraph 6 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to that Act; and
  - (b) the amendments made by subsections (3)(a), (4) and (5) do not apply in relation to any request for approval made before the appointed day for the purposes of paragraph 8(1) or (as the case may be) 9(1) of that Part of that Schedule.

## **208 Power to amend terms implied in site agreements**

- (1) After section 2 of the Mobile Homes Act 1983 (c. 34) insert—

### **“2A Power to amend implied terms**

- (1) The appropriate national authority may by order make such amendments of Part 1 or 2 of Schedule 1 to this Act as the authority considers appropriate.
- (2) An order under this section—
- (a) shall be made by statutory instrument;
  - (b) may make different provision with respect to different cases or descriptions of case, including different provision for different areas;
  - (c) may contain such incidental, supplementary, consequential, transitional or saving provisions as the authority making the order considers appropriate.
- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (1) and (2), an order under this section may—
- (a) make provision for or in connection with the determination by the court of such questions, or the making by the court of such orders, as are specified in the order;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) make such amendments of any provision of this Act as the authority making the order considers appropriate in consequence of any amendment made by the order in Part 1 or 2 of Schedule 1.
- (4) The first order made under this section in relation to England or Wales respectively may provide for all or any of its provisions to apply in relation to agreements to which this Act applies that were made at any time before the day on which the order comes into force (as well as in relation to such agreements made on or after that day).
- (5) No order may be made by the appropriate national authority under this section unless the authority has consulted—
  - (a) such organisations as appear to it to be representative of interests substantially affected by the order; and
  - (b) such other persons as it considers appropriate.
- (6) No order may be made by the Secretary of State under this section unless a draft of the order has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.”
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (5) of the section 2A inserted by this section, consultation undertaken before the date of the passing of this Act constitutes as effective compliance with that subsection as if undertaken on or after that date.

*Protection from eviction etc.*

## 209 Protected sites to include sites for gypsies

- [<sup>F116</sup>(1) Section 1 of the Caravan Sites Act 1968 (c. 52) (application of provisions for protection of residential occupiers of caravan sites) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) (under which “protected site” includes certain local authority sites) for “paragraph 11 of Schedule 1 to that Act (exemption of land occupied by local authorities) substitute “paragraph 11 or 11A of Schedule 1 to that Act (exemption of gypsy and other local authority sites)”.
- (3) The amendment made by subsection (2) above does not affect the operation of—
  - (a) section 2 of the Act (minimum length of notice) in relation to any notice given before the day on which this section comes into force, or
  - (b) section 3 of the Act (protection from eviction) in relation to any conduct occurring before that day, or
  - (c) section 4 of the Act (suspension of eviction orders) in relation to any proceedings begun before that day.
- (4) In subsection (3)(b) the reference to section 3 of the Act is to that section whether as amended by section 210 of this Act or otherwise.]

### Textual Amendments

**F116** Ss. 209-211 repealed (S.) (1.4.2009) by *Housing (Scotland) Act 2006 (asp 1)*, ss. 192(2), 195(3), **Sch. 7** (with ss. 193, 194(7)); S.S.I. 2009/122, **art. 3**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 210 Extension of protection from harassment for occupiers of mobile homes

- [<sup>F117</sup>(1) Section 3 of the Caravan Sites Act 1968 (protection of occupiers against eviction and harassment) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) (offence where person, with the specified intent, does acts calculated to interfere with the peace or comfort of the occupier etc.) for “calculated to interfere” substitute “likely to interfere”.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert—
- “(1A) Subject to the provisions of this section, the owner of a protected site or his agent shall be guilty of an offence under this section if, whether during the subsistence or after the expiration or determination of a residential contract—
- (a) he does acts likely to interfere with the peace or comfort of the occupier or persons residing with him, or
- (b) he persistently withdraws or withholds services or facilities reasonably required for the occupation of the caravan as a residence on the site,
- and (in either case) he knows, or has reasonable cause to believe, that that conduct is likely to cause the occupier to do any of the things mentioned in subsection (1)(c)(i) or (ii) of this section.
- (1B) References in subsection (1A) of this section to the owner of a protected site include references to a person with an estate or interest in the site which is superior to that of the owner.”
- (4) In subsection (3) (penalties for offences), for the words from “be liable” onwards substitute
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to both;
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 2 years, or to both.”
- (5) After subsection (4) insert—
- “(4A) In proceedings for an offence under subsection (1A) of this section it shall be a defence to prove that the accused had reasonable grounds for doing the acts or withdrawing or withholding the services or facilities in question.”
- (6) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to any conduct occurring before the day on which this section comes into force.
- (7) In the case of an offence committed before section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44) comes into force, the amendment made by subsection (4) has effect as if for “12 months” there were substituted “6 months”.]

### Textual Amendments

**F117** Ss. 209-211 repealed (S.) (1.4.2009) by [Housing \(Scotland\) Act 2006 \(asp 1\)](#), ss. 192(2), 195(3), [Sch. 7](#) (with ss. 193, 194(7)); S.S.I. 2009/122, [art. 3](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 211 Suspension of eviction orders

- [<sup>F118</sup>(1) In section 4(6) of the Caravan Sites Act 1968 (c. 52) (provision for suspension of eviction orders) for the words from “in the following cases” to the end of paragraph (b) substitute
- (a) no site licence under Part 1 of that Act is in force in respect of the site, and
  - (b) paragraph 11 or 11A of Schedule 1 to the Caravan Sites and Control of Development Act 1960 (c. 2) does not apply;”.
- (2) The amendment made by subsection (1) does not apply in relation to proceedings begun before the day on which this section comes into force.]

### Textual Amendments

**F118** Ss. 209-211 repealed (S.) (1.4.2009) by [Housing \(Scotland\) Act 2006 \(asp 1\)](#), ss. 192(2), 195(3), [Sch. 7](#) (with ss. 193, 194(7)); S.S.I. 2009/122, [art. 3](#)

## CHAPTER 4

### TENANCY DEPOSIT SCHEMES

## 212 Tenancy deposit schemes

- (1) The appropriate national authority must make arrangements for securing that one or more tenancy deposit schemes are available for the purpose of safeguarding tenancy deposits paid in connection with shorthold tenancies.
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter a “tenancy deposit scheme” is a scheme which—
  - (a) is made for the purpose of safeguarding tenancy deposits paid in connection with shorthold tenancies and facilitating the resolution of disputes arising in connection with such deposits, and
  - (b) complies with the requirements of Schedule 10.
- (3) Arrangements under subsection (1) must be arrangements made with any body or person under which the body or person (“the scheme administrator”) undertakes to establish and maintain a tenancy deposit scheme of a description specified in the arrangements.
- (4) The appropriate national authority may—
  - (a) give financial assistance to the scheme administrator;
  - (b) make payments to the scheme administrator (otherwise than as financial assistance) in pursuance of arrangements under subsection (1).
- (5) The appropriate national authority may, in such manner and on such terms as it thinks fit, guarantee the discharge of any financial obligation incurred by the scheme administrator in connection with arrangements under subsection (1).
- (6) Arrangements under subsection (1) must require the scheme administrator to give the appropriate national authority, in such manner and at such times as it may specify, such information and facilities for obtaining information as it may specify.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

[<sup>F119</sup>(6A) For further provision about what must be included in the arrangements, see section 212A.]

(7) The appropriate national authority may make regulations conferring or imposing—

- (a) on scheme administrators, or
- (b) on scheme administrators of any description specified in the regulations,

such powers or duties in connection with arrangements under subsection (1) as are so specified.

(8) In this Chapter—

“authorised”, in relation to a tenancy deposit scheme, means that the scheme is in force in accordance with arrangements under subsection (1);

“custodial scheme” and “insurance scheme” have the meaning given by paragraph 1(2) and (3) of Schedule 10);

“money” means money in the form of cash or otherwise;

“shorthold tenancy” means an assured shorthold tenancy within the meaning of Chapter 2 of Part 1 of the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50);

“tenancy deposit”, in relation to a shorthold tenancy, means any money intended to be held (by the landlord or otherwise) as security for—

- (a) the performance of any obligations of the tenant, or
- (b) the discharge of any liability of his,

arising under or in connection with the tenancy.

(9) In this Chapter—

(a) references to a landlord or landlords in relation to any shorthold tenancy or tenancies include references to a person or persons acting on his or their behalf in relation to the tenancy or tenancies, and

(b) references to a tenancy deposit being held in accordance with a scheme include, in the case of a custodial scheme, references to an amount representing the deposit being held in accordance with the scheme.

#### Textual Amendments

**F119** S. 212(6A) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 128(2)**, 216(3); S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(g)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C12** S. 212(9)(a) excluded by S.I. 2007/797, arts. 2(5), 3 (as inserted (26.3.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 30(2)(3)**, 115(1)(a) (with s. 30(4)))

#### Commencement Information

**I162** S. 212 wholly in force at 6.4.2007; s. 212 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 212 in force for W. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/305](#), **art. 2**; s. 212 in force for E. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/1068](#), **art. 2(a)**

[<sup>F120</sup>**212A** **Provision of information to local authorities**

(1) Arrangements under section 212(1) made by the Secretary of State must require the scheme administrator—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) to give a local housing authority in England any specified information that they request, or
  - (b) to provide facilities for the sharing of specified information with a local housing authority in England.
- (2) In subsection (1) “specified information” means information, of a description specified in the arrangements, that relates to a tenancy of premises in the local housing authority's area.
- (3) Arrangements made by virtue of this section may make the requirement to provide information or facilities to a local housing authority conditional on the payment of a fee.
- (4) Arrangements made by virtue of this section may include supplementary provision, for example about—
- (a) the form or manner in which any information is to be provided,
  - (b) the time or times at which it is to be provided, and
  - (c) the notification of anyone to whom the information relates.
- (5) Information obtained by a local housing authority by virtue of this section may be used only—
- (a) for a purpose connected with the exercise of the authority's functions under any of Parts 1 to 4 in relation to any premises, or
  - (b) for the purpose of investigating whether an offence has been committed under any of those Parts in relation to any premises.
- (6) Information obtained by a local housing authority by virtue of this section may be supplied to a person providing services to the authority for a purpose listed in subsection (5).
- (7) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend the list of purposes in subsection (5).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F120** S. 212A inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), ss. **128(3)**, 216(3); S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(g)

## 213 Requirements relating to tenancy deposits

- (1) Any tenancy deposit paid to a person in connection with a shorthold tenancy must, as from the time when it is received, be dealt with in accordance with an authorised scheme.
- (2) No person may require the payment of a tenancy deposit in connection with a shorthold tenancy which is not to be subject to the requirement in subsection (1).
- (3) Where a landlord receives a tenancy deposit in connection with a shorthold tenancy, the initial requirements of an authorised scheme must be complied with by the landlord in relation to the deposit within the period of [ <sup>F121</sup> 30 ] days beginning with the date on which it is received.
- (4) For the purposes of this section “the initial requirements” of an authorised scheme are such requirements imposed by the scheme as fall to be complied with by a landlord on receiving such a tenancy deposit.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) A landlord who has received such a tenancy deposit must give the tenant and any relevant person such information relating to—
- (a) the authorised scheme applying to the deposit,
  - (b) compliance by the landlord with the initial requirements of the scheme in relation to the deposit, and
  - (c) the operation of provisions of this Chapter in relation to the deposit, as may be prescribed.
- (6) The information required by subsection (5) must be given to the tenant and any relevant person—
- (a) in the prescribed form or in a form substantially to the same effect, and
  - (b) within the period of [<sup>F122</sup> 30 ] days beginning with the date on which the deposit is received by the landlord.
- (7) No person may, in connection with a shorthold tenancy, require a deposit which consists of property other than money.
- (8) In subsection (7) “deposit” means a transfer of property intended to be held (by the landlord or otherwise) as security for—
- (a) the performance of any obligations of the tenant, or
  - (b) the discharge of any liability of his, arising under or in connection with the tenancy.
- (9) The provisions of this section apply despite any agreement to the contrary.
- (10) In this section—
- “prescribed” means prescribed by an order made by the appropriate national authority;
  - “property” means moveable property;
  - “relevant person” means any person who, in accordance with arrangements made with the tenant, paid the deposit on behalf of the tenant.

#### Textual Amendments

- F121** Word in s. 213(3) substituted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(2\)\(a\)](#), 240(2); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029](#), arts. 2, 4)
- F122** Word in s. 213(6)(b) substituted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(2\)\(b\)](#), 240(2); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029](#), arts. 2, 4)

#### Commencement Information

- I163** S. 213 wholly in force at 6.4.2007; s. 213 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 213 in force for W. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/305, art. 2](#); s. 213 in force for E. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/1068, art. 2\(a\)](#)

## 214 Proceedings relating to tenancy deposits

- (1) Where a tenancy deposit has been paid in connection with a shorthold tenancy [<sup>F123</sup>on or after 6 April 2007], the tenant or any relevant person (as defined by section 213(10)) may make an application to [<sup>F124</sup>the county court] on the grounds—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- [<sup>F125</sup>(a) that section 213(3) or (6) has not been complied with in relation to the deposit, or]
- (b) that he has been notified by the landlord that a particular authorised scheme applies to the deposit but has been unable to obtain confirmation from the scheme administrator that the deposit is being held in accordance with the scheme.
- [<sup>F126</sup>(1A) Subsection (1) also applies in a case where the tenancy has ended, and in such a case the reference in subsection (1) to the tenant is to a person who was a tenant under the tenancy.]
- (2) Subsections (3) and (4) apply [<sup>F127</sup> in the case of an application under subsection (1) if the tenancy has not ended and ] the court—
- [<sup>F128</sup>(a) is satisfied that section 213(3) or (6) has not been complied with in relation to the deposit, or]
- (b) is not satisfied that the deposit is being held in accordance with an authorised scheme,
- as the case may be.
- [<sup>F129</sup>(2A) Subsections (3A) and (4) apply in the case of an application under subsection (1) if the tenancy has ended (whether before or after the making of the application) and the court—
- (a) is satisfied that section 213(3) or (6) has not been complied with in relation to the deposit, or
- (b) is not satisfied that the deposit is being held in accordance with an authorised scheme,
- as the case may be.]
- (3) The court must, as it thinks fit, either—
- (a) order the person who appears to the court to be holding the deposit to repay it to the applicant, or
- (b) order that person to pay the deposit into the designated account held by the scheme administrator under an authorised custodial scheme,
- within the period of 14 days beginning with the date of the making of the order.
- [<sup>F130</sup>(3A) The court may order the person who appears to the court to be holding the deposit to repay all or part of it to the applicant within the period of 14 days beginning with the date of the making of the order.]
- (4) The court must <sup>F131</sup>... order the landlord to pay to the applicant a sum of money [<sup>F132</sup> not less than the amount of the deposit and not more than ] three times the amount of the deposit within the period of 14 days beginning with the date of the making of the order.
- (5) Where any deposit given in connection with a shorthold tenancy could not be lawfully required as a result of section 213(7), the property in question is recoverable from the person holding it by the person by whom it was given as a deposit.
- (6) In subsection (5) “deposit” has the meaning given by section 213(8).

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F123** Words in s. 214(1) inserted (26.3.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 31(2)**, 115(1)(a)



*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F124** Words in s. 214(1) substituted (22.4.2014) by [Crime and Courts Act 2013 \(c. 22\), s. 61\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 52](#); [S.I. 2014/954, art. 2\(c\)](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (with transitional provisions and savings in [S.I. 2014/956, arts. 3-11](#))
- F125** S. 214(1)(a) substituted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(4\), 240\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#)(with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))
- F126** S. 214(1A) inserted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(5\), 240\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))
- F127** Words in s. 214(2) substituted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(6\)\(a\), 240\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))
- F128** S. 214(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(6\)\(b\), 240\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))
- F129** S. 214(2A) inserted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(7\), 240\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))
- F130** S. 214(3A) inserted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(8\), 240\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#)(with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))
- F131** Word in s. 214(4) repealed (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(9\)\(a\), 240\(2\), Sch. 25 Pt. 30](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)\(e\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))
- F132** Words in s. 214(4) substituted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\), ss. 184\(9\)\(b\), 240\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/628, art. 8\(c\)](#) (with [arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20](#)) (as amended (3.8.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2029, arts. 2, 4](#))

#### Commencement Information

- I164** S. 214 wholly in force at 6.4.2007; s. 214 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 214 in force for W. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/305, art. 2](#); s. 214 in force for E. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/1068, art. 2\(a\)](#)

## 215 Sanctions for non-compliance

- [<sup>F133</sup>(1) Subject to subsection (2A), if (whether before, on or after 6 April 2007) a tenancy deposit has been paid in connection with a shorthold tenancy, no section 21 notice may be given in relation to the tenancy at a time when the deposit is not being held in accordance with an authorised scheme.
- (1A) Subject to subsection (2A), if a tenancy deposit has been paid in connection with a shorthold tenancy on or after 6 April 2007, no section 21 notice may be given in relation to the tenancy at a time when section 213(3) has not been complied with in relation to the deposit.]
- (2) [<sup>F134</sup> Subject to subsection (2A), ]If section 213(6) is not complied with in relation to a deposit given in connection with a shorthold tenancy, no section 21 notice may be given in relation to the tenancy until such time as section 213(6)(a) is complied with.
- [<sup>F135</sup>(2A) Subsections (1) [<sup>F136</sup>, (1A)] and (2) do not apply in a case where—
- (a) the deposit has been returned to the tenant in full or with such deductions as are agreed between the landlord and tenant, or
- (b) an application to [<sup>F137</sup>the county court] has been made under section 214(1) and has been determined by the court, withdrawn or settled by agreement between the parties.]
- (3) If any deposit given in connection with a shorthold tenancy could not be lawfully required as a result of section 213(7), no section 21 notice may be given in relation

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to the tenancy until such time as the property in question is returned to the person by whom it was given as a deposit.

- (4) In subsection (3) “deposit” has the meaning given by section 213(8).
- (5) In this section a “section 21 notice” means a notice under section 21(1)(b) or (4)(a) of the Housing Act 1988 (recovery of possession on termination of shorthold tenancy).

#### Textual Amendments

- F133** S. 215(1)(1A) substituted for s. 215(1) (26.3.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 31(3)(a)**, 115(1)(a)
- F134** Words in s. 215(2) inserted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 184(12)**, 240(2); S.I. 2012/628, **art. 8(c)** (with **arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20**) (as amended (3.8.2012) by S.I. 2012/2029, **arts. 2, 4**)
- F135** S. 215(2A) inserted (6.4.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 184(13)**, 240(2); S.I. 2012/628, **art. 8(c)** (with **arts. 9, 12, 13, 16, 18-20**) (as amended (3.8.2012) by S.I. 2012/2029, **arts. 2, 4**)
- F136** Word in s. 215(2A) inserted (26.3.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 31(3)(b)**, 115(1)(a)
- F137** Words in s. 215(2A) substituted (22.4.2014) by [Crime and Courts Act 2013 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 61(3), **Sch. 9 para. 52**; S.I. 2014/954, **art. 2(c)** (with **art. 3**) (with transitional provisions and savings in S.I. 2014/956, **arts. 3-11**)

#### Commencement Information

- I165** S. 215 wholly in force at 6.4.2007; s. 215 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 215 in force for W. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/305](#), **art. 2**; s. 215 in force for E. at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/1068](#), **art. 2(a)**

### [<sup>F138</sup>215A] Statutory periodic tenancies: deposit received before 6 April 2007

- (1) This section applies where—
- (a) before 6 April 2007, a tenancy deposit has been received by a landlord in connection with a fixed term shorthold tenancy,
  - (b) on or after that date, a periodic shorthold tenancy is deemed to arise under section 5 of the Housing Act 1988 on the coming to an end of the fixed term tenancy,
  - (c) on the coming to an end of the fixed term tenancy, all or part of the deposit paid in connection with the fixed term tenancy is held in connection with the periodic tenancy, and
  - (d) the requirements of section 213(3), (5) and (6) have not been complied with by the landlord in relation to the deposit held in connection with the periodic tenancy.
- (2) If, on the commencement date—
- (a) the periodic tenancy is in existence, and
  - (b) all or part of the deposit paid in connection with the fixed term tenancy continues to be held in connection with the periodic tenancy,

section 213 applies in respect of the deposit that continues to be held in connection with the periodic tenancy, and any additional deposit held in connection with that tenancy, with the modifications set out in subsection (3).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The modifications are that, instead of the things referred to in section 213(3) and (5) being required to be done within the time periods set out in section 213(3) and (6)(b), those things are required to be done—
- (a) before the end of the period of 90 days beginning with the commencement date, or
  - (b) (if earlier) before the first day after the commencement date on which a court does any of the following in respect of the periodic tenancy—
    - (i) determines an application under section 214 or decides an appeal against a determination under that section;
    - (ii) makes a determination as to whether to make an order for possession in proceedings under section 21 of the Housing Act 1988 or decides an appeal against such a determination.
- (4) If, on the commencement date—
- (a) the periodic tenancy is no longer in existence, or
  - (b) no deposit continues to be held in connection with the periodic tenancy,
- the requirements of section 213(3), (5) and (6) are treated as if they had been complied with by the landlord in relation to any deposit that was held in connection with the periodic tenancy.
- (5) In this section “the commencement date” means the date on which the Deregulation Act 2015 is passed.

#### Textual Amendments

**F138** Ss. 215A-215C inserted (26.3.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 32**, 115(1)(a)

### **215B Shorthold tenancies: deposit received on or after 6 April 2007**

- (1) This section applies where—
- (a) on or after 6 April 2007, a tenancy deposit has been received by a landlord in connection with a shorthold tenancy (“the original tenancy”),
  - (b) the initial requirements of an authorised scheme have been complied with by the landlord in relation to the deposit (ignoring any requirement to take particular steps within any specified period),
  - (c) the requirements of section 213(5) and (6)(a) have been complied with by the landlord in relation to the deposit when it is held in connection with the original tenancy (ignoring any deemed compliance under section 215A(4)),
  - (d) a new shorthold tenancy comes into being on the coming to an end of the original tenancy or a tenancy that replaces the original tenancy (directly or indirectly),
  - (e) the new tenancy replaces the original tenancy (directly or indirectly), and
  - (f) when the new tenancy comes into being, the deposit continues to be held in connection with the new tenancy, in accordance with the same authorised scheme as when the requirements of section 213(5) and (6)(a) were last complied with by the landlord in relation to the deposit.
- (2) In their application to the new tenancy, the requirements of section 213(3), (5) and (6) are treated as if they had been complied with by the landlord in relation to the deposit.

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The condition in subsection (1)(a) may be met in respect of a tenancy even if the tenancy deposit was first received in connection with an earlier tenancy (including where it was first received before 6 April 2007).
- (4) For the purposes of this section, a tenancy replaces an earlier tenancy if—
  - (a) the landlord and tenant immediately before the coming to an end of the earlier tenancy are the same as the landlord and tenant at the start of the new tenancy, and
  - (b) the premises let under both tenancies are the same or substantially the same.

#### Textual Amendments

**F138** Ss. 215A-215C inserted (26.3.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 32**, 115(1)(a)

### 215C Sections 215A and 215B: transitional provisions

- (1) Sections 215A and 215B are treated as having had effect since 6 April 2007, subject to the following provisions of this section.
- (2) Sections 215A and 215B do not have effect in relation to—
  - (a) a claim under section 214 of this Act or section 21 of the Housing Act 1988 in respect of a tenancy which is settled before the commencement date (whether or not proceedings in relation to the claim have been instituted), or
  - (b) proceedings under either of those sections in respect of a tenancy which have been finally determined before the commencement date.
- (3) Subsection (5) applies in respect of a tenancy if—
  - (a) proceedings under section 214 in respect of the tenancy have been instituted before the commencement date but have not been settled or finally determined before that date, and
  - (b) because of section 215A(4) or 215B(2), the court decides—
    - (i) not to make an order under section 214(4) in respect of the tenancy, or
    - (ii) to allow an appeal by the landlord against such an order.
- (4) Subsection (5) also applies in respect of a tenancy if—
  - (a) proceedings for possession under section 21 of the Housing Act 1988 in respect of the tenancy have been instituted before the commencement date but have not been settled or finally determined before that date, and
  - (b) because of section 215A(4) or 215B(2), the court decides—
    - (i) to make an order for possession under that section in respect of the tenancy, or
    - (ii) to allow an appeal by the landlord against a refusal to make such an order.
- (5) Where this subsection applies, the court must not order the tenant or any relevant person (as defined by section 213(10)) to pay the landlord's costs, to the extent that the court reasonably considers those costs are attributable to the proceedings under section 214 of this Act or (as the case may be) section 21 of the Housing Act 1988.
- (6) Proceedings have been “finally determined” for the purposes of this section if —
  - (a) they have been determined by a court, and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) there is no further right to appeal against the determination.
- (7) There is no further right to appeal against a court determination if there is no right to appeal against the determination, or there is such a right but—
  - (a) the time limit for making an appeal has expired without an appeal being brought, or
  - (b) an appeal brought within that time limit has been withdrawn.
- (8) In this section “the commencement date” means the date on which the Deregulation Act 2015 is passed.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F138** Ss. 215A-215C inserted (26.3.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), **ss. 32**, 115(1)(a)

**CHAPTER 5**

MISCELLANEOUS

*Overcrowding*

**216 Overcrowding**

- (1) The appropriate national authority may by order make such provision as it considers appropriate for and in connection with—
  - (a) determining whether a dwelling is overcrowded for the purposes of Part 10 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (overcrowding);
  - (b) introducing for the purposes of Chapter 3 of Part 4 of this Act a concept of overcrowding similar to that applying for the purposes of Part 10 (and accordingly removing the discretion of local housing authorities to decide particular issues arising under those sections);
  - (c) securing that overcrowding in premises to which Chapter 3 of Part 4 of this Act would otherwise apply, or any description of such premises, is regulated only by provisions of Part 10.
- (2) An order under this section may, in particular, make provision for regulating the making by local housing authorities of determinations as to whether premises are overcrowded, including provision prescribing—
  - (a) factors that must be taken into account by such authorities when making such determinations;
  - (b) the procedure that is to be followed by them in connection with making such determinations.
- (3) An order under this section may modify any enactment (including this Act).
- (4) In this section—
  - (a) any reference to Part 10 of the Housing Act 1985 includes a reference to Part 10 as modified by an order under this section; and
  - (b) “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30)).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Energy efficiency*

#### **217 Energy efficiency of residential accommodation: England**

- [<sup>F139</sup>(1) The Secretary of State must take reasonable steps to ensure that by 2010 the general level of energy efficiency of residential accommodation in England has increased by at least 20 per cent compared with the general level of such energy efficiency in 2000.
- (2) Nothing in this section affects the duties of the Secretary of State under section 2 of the Sustainable Energy Act 2003 (c. 30) (energy efficiency aim in respect of residential accommodation in England).
- (3) In this section “residential accommodation” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Home Energy Conservation Act 1995 (c. 10).]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F139** S. 217 ceases to have effect (21.3.2012) by virtue of [Energy Act 2011 \(c. 16\)](#), **ss. 118(5)**, 121(1); S.I. 2012/873, art. 2(c)

### *Registered social landlords*

#### **218 Amendments relating to registered social landlords**

Schedule 11 (which makes amendments relating to registered social landlords) has effect.

#### **219 Disclosure of information to registered social landlords for the purposes of section 1 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998**

In section 115(2) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (c. 37) after paragraph (d) insert—

- “(da) a person registered under section 1 of the Housing Act 1996 as a social landlord;”.

### *Other provisions relating to social housing*

#### **220 Additional power to give grants for social housing**

After section 27 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) insert—

#### *“Grants to bodies other than registered social landlords*

##### **27A Grants to bodies other than registered social landlords**

- (1) The Relevant Authority may make grants under this section to persons other than registered social landlords.
- (2) Grants under this section are grants for any of the following purposes—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) acquiring, or repairing and improving, or creating by the conversion of houses or other property, houses to be disposed of—
    - (i) under equity percentage arrangements, or
    - (ii) on shared ownership terms;
  - (b) constructing houses to be disposed of—
    - (i) under equity percentage arrangements, or
    - (ii) on shared ownership terms;
  - (c) providing loans to be secured by mortgages to assist persons to acquire houses for their own occupation;
  - (d) providing, constructing or improving houses to be kept available for letting;
  - (e) providing, constructing or improving houses for letting that are to be managed by such registered social landlords, and under arrangements containing such terms, as are approved by the Relevant Authority;
  - (f) such other purposes as may be specified in an order under subsection (3).
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order make such provision in connection with the making of grants under this section as he considers appropriate.
- (4) An order under subsection (3) may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) defining “equity percentage arrangements” for the purposes of this section;
  - (b) specifying or describing the bodies from whom loans may be obtained by persons wishing to acquire houses for their own occupation;
  - (c) dealing with the priority of mortgages entered into by such persons;
  - (d) specifying purposes additional to those mentioned in subsection (2)(a) to (e).
- (5) As regards grants made by the Housing Corporation, an order under subsection (3) may also require the imposition of conditions in connection with such grants, and for this purpose may—
- (a) prescribe conditions that are to be so imposed;
  - (b) prescribe matters about which conditions are to be so imposed and any particular effects that such conditions are to achieve.
- (6) The Relevant Authority shall specify in relation to grants under this section—
- (a) the procedure to be followed in relation to applications for grant,
  - (b) the circumstances in which grant is or is not to be payable,
  - (c) the method for calculating, and any limitations on, the amount of grant, and
  - (d) the manner in which, and the time or times at which, grant is to be paid.
- (7) If, by virtue of subsection (5), an order under subsection (3) requires conditions to be imposed by the Housing Corporation in connection with a grant to a person under this section, the Corporation in making the grant—
- (a) must provide that the grant is conditional on compliance by the person with such conditions as are required by the order; and
  - (b) if it exercises its power to impose conditions under subsection (8), must not impose any that are inconsistent with the requirements of the order.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (8) In making a grant to a person under this section the Relevant Authority may provide that the grant is conditional on compliance by the person with such conditions as the Authority may specify.
- (9) The conditions that may be so specified include conditions requiring the payment to the Relevant Authority in specified circumstances of a sum determined by the Authority (with or without interest).
- (10) An order under subsection (3) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (11) In this section—
  - “disposed of on shared ownership terms” has the meaning given by section 2(6);
  - “letting” includes the grant of a licence to occupy.

### **27B Transfer of property funded by grants under section 27A**

- (1) Where—
  - (a) any grant is paid or payable to any person under section 27A, and
  - (b) at any time property to which the grant relates becomes vested in, or is leased for a term of years to, or reverts to, another person who is not a registered social landlord,

this Part shall have effect, in relation to times falling after that time, as if the grant, or such proportion of it as is determined or specified under subsection (4), had been paid or (as the case may be) were payable to that other person under section 27A.
- (2) Where—
  - (a) any amount is paid or payable to any person by way of grant under section 27A, and
  - (b) at any time property to which the grant relates becomes vested in, or is leased for a term of years to, or reverts to, a registered social landlord,

this Part shall have effect, in relation to times falling after that time, as if the grant, or such proportion of it as is determined or specified under subsection (4), had been paid or (as the case may be) were payable to that other person under section 18.
- (3) In such a case, the relevant section 18 conditions accordingly apply to that grant or proportion of it, in relation to times falling after that time, in place of those specified under section 27A(8).
  - “The relevant section 18 conditions” means such conditions specified under section 18(3) as would have applied at the time of the making of the grant if it had been made under section 18 to a registered social landlord.
- (4) The proportion mentioned in subsection (1) or (2) is that which, in the circumstances of the particular case—
  - (a) the Relevant Authority, acting in accordance with such principles as it may from time to time determine, may specify as being appropriate, or
  - (b) the Relevant Authority may determine to be appropriate.”



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Commencement Information

**I166** S. 220 partly in force; s. 220 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b); s. 220 in force for E. in so far as not already in force at 17.2.2005 by [S.I. 2005/326](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

### 221 Extension of right to acquire

After section 16 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) insert—

#### “16A Extension of section 16 to dwellings funded by grants under section 27A

- (1) Section 16 applies in relation to a dwelling (“a funded dwelling”) provided or acquired wholly or in part by means of a grant under section 27A (grants to bodies other than registered social landlords) with the following modifications.
- (2) In section 16(1) the reference to a registered social landlord includes a reference to any person to whom a grant has been paid under section 27A.
- (3) In section 16(2) and (4) any reference to section 18 includes a reference to section 27A.
- (4) For the purposes of section 16 a funded dwelling is to be regarded as having remained within the social rented sector in relation to any relevant time if, since it was acquired or provided as mentioned in subsection (1) above, it was used—
  - (a) by the recipient of the grant mentioned in that subsection, or
  - (b) if section 27B applies in relation to the grant, by each person to whom the grant was, or is treated as having been, paid,exclusively for the purposes for which the grant was made or any other purposes agreed to by the Relevant Authority.
- (5) In subsection (4) “relevant time” means a time when the dwelling would not be treated as being within the social rented sector by virtue of section 16(3).”

#### Commencement Information

**I167** S. 221 partly in force; s. 221 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 221 in force for E. at 17.2.2005 by [S.I. 2005/326](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

### 222 Rights of pre-emption in connection with assured tenancies

- (1) Section 5 of the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50) (security of tenure for assured tenants) is amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (5) (certain obligations etc. of tenant to be unenforceable) insert—

“(5A) Nothing in subsection (5) affects any right of pre-emption—

  - (a) which is exercisable by the landlord under a tenancy in circumstances where the tenant indicates his intention to dispose of the whole of his interest under the tenancy, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) in pursuance of which the landlord would be required to pay, in respect of the acquisition of that interest, an amount representing its market value.

“Dispose” means dispose by assignment or surrender, and “acquisition” has a corresponding meaning.”

- (3) The amendment made by subsection (2) does not apply in relation to any right of pre-emption granted before the day on which this section comes into force.

## 223 Allocation of housing accommodation by local authorities

In section 167(2)(d) of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (people to whom preference is to be given in allocating housing accommodation) after “medical or welfare grounds” insert “ (including grounds relating to a disability) ”.

### Commencement Information

**I168** S. 223 partly in force; s. 223 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 223 in force for E. at 27.4.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1120](#), [art. 2](#)

### *Disabled facilities grant*

## 224 Disabled facilities grant: caravans

- (1) The Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996 (c. 53) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 1(1)(c)(i) (grants in relation to qualifying park homes) for “qualifying park homes” substitute “ caravans ”.
- (3) In section 19(1) (applications for grants) for paragraph (c) substitute—
  - “(c) that the applicant is an occupier (alone or jointly with others) of a qualifying houseboat or a caravan and, in the case of a caravan, that at the time the application was made the caravan was stationed on land within the authority’s area.”
- (4) In section 22A (certificates required in case of occupier’s application)—
  - (a) for “qualifying park home” in subsection (2)(b) and (3)(a) and (b) substitute “ caravan ”, and
  - (b) for “pitch” in subsection (3)(a) substitute “ land ”.
- (5) In the following provisions for “qualifying park home” substitute “ caravan ”
  - (a) section 23(1)(a)(i), (b)(i), (i) and (k) (purposes of grant);
  - (b) section 24(3)(b)(i) (approval of application);
  - (c) section 29(3) (restriction on grants for works already begun);
  - (d) section 41(1)(b) (change of circumstances).
- (6) In section 57(2)(a) (power of authority to carry out works)—
  - (a) for “qualifying park home”, in each place where it occurs, substitute “ caravan ”, and
  - (b) for “pitch” in sub-paragraph (i) substitute “ land ”.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (7) In section 58 (minor definitions for the purposes of Chapter 1 of Part 1)—
- (a) before the definition of “common parts” insert—
    - ““caravan”—
    - (a) means a caravan within the meaning of Part 1 of the Caravan Sites and Control of Development Act 1960 (disregarding the amendment made by section 13(2) of the Caravan Sites Act 1968); and
    - (b) includes any yard, garden, outhouses and appurtenances belonging to it or usually enjoyed with it;” and
  - (b) for “qualifying park home” in the definition of “premises” substitute “ caravan”, and
  - (c) omit the definition of “qualifying park home”.

- (8) In section 59 (index of defined expressions)—
- (a) before the entry relating to “certified date” insert—

---

“caravan section 58”; and

---

- (b) omit the entry relating to “qualifying park home”.

- (9) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to any application for a disabled facilities grant under the Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996 (c. 53) that is made before the day on which this section comes into force.

*Accommodation needs of gypsies and travellers*

**<sup>F141</sup>225 Duties of local housing authorities [<sup>F140</sup>in England] : accommodation needs of gypsies and travellers**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F140** Words in s. 225 heading inserted (25.2.2015) by [Housing \(Wales\) Act 2014 \(anaw 7\)](#), s. 145(3), [Sch. 3 para. 24\(2\)\(d\)](#); [S.I. 2015/380](#), art. 2(h)

**F141** S. 225 omitted (12.7.2016) by virtue of [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 124\(2\)](#), 216(2)(a)

**<sup>F142</sup>226 Guidance in relation to section 225**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F142** S. 226 omitted (12.7.2016) by virtue of [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 124\(2\)](#), 216(2)(a)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

*Annual reports by local housing authorities*

**227 Removal of duty on local housing authorities to send annual reports to tenants etc.**

Omit section 167 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c. 42) (duty of local housing authorities to send annual reports to tenants).

**Commencement Information**

**I169** S. 227 wholly in force at 14.7.2005; s. 227 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 227 in force for E. at 17.2.2005 by [S.I. 2005/326, art. 2\(a\)](#); s. 227 in force for W. at 14.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1814, art. 2\(b\)](#)

*Social Housing Ombudsman for Wales*

**228 Social Housing Ombudsman for Wales**

(1) After subsection (6) of section 51 of the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) (schemes for investigation of housing complaints) insert—

“(7) This section shall not apply in relation to social landlords in Wales (within the meaning given by section 51C).”

- (2) <sup>F143</sup> .....
- (3) <sup>F143</sup> .....
- (4) <sup>F143</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F143** S. 228(2)-(4) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Public Services Ombudsman \(Wales\) Act 2005 \(c. 10\), ss. 39\(2\), 40, Sch. 7; S.I. 2005/2800, art. 5\(1\)](#)

**Commencement Information**

**I170** S. 228 wholly in force at 14.7.2005; s. 228 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(b)(7); s. 228 in force otherwise at 14.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1814, art. 2\(c\)](#)

**PART 7**

SUPPLEMENTARY AND FINAL PROVISIONS

*Residential property tribunals*

**229 Residential property tribunals**

(1) Any jurisdiction conferred on a residential property tribunal by or under any enactment is exercisable by a rent assessment committee constituted in accordance with Schedule 10 to the Rent Act 1977 (c. 42).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) When so constituted for exercising any such jurisdiction a rent assessment committee is known as a residential property tribunal.
- (3) The [<sup>F144</sup>National Assembly for Wales] may by order make provision for and in connection with conferring on residential property tribunals, in relation to such matters as are specified in the order, such jurisdiction as is so specified.
- (4) An order under subsection (3) may modify an enactment (including this Act).
- (5) In this section “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30)).

#### Textual Amendments

**F144** Words in s. 229(3) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), [art. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 173](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I171** S. 229 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 229 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 229 in force for E. at 4.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1729](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#) (subject to [art. 3](#)); s. 229 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 230 Powers and procedure of residential property tribunals

- (1) A residential property tribunal exercising any jurisdiction [<sup>F145</sup>in respect of premises situated in Wales] by virtue of any enactment has, in addition to any specific powers exercisable by it in exercising that jurisdiction, the general power mentioned in subsection (2).
- (2) The tribunal’s general power is a power by order to give such directions as the tribunal considers necessary or desirable for securing the just, expeditious and economical disposal of the proceedings or any issue raised in or in connection with them.
- (3) In deciding whether to give directions under its general power a tribunal must have regard to—
  - (a) the matters falling to be determined in the proceedings,
  - (b) any other circumstances appearing to the tribunal to be relevant, and
  - (c) the provisions of the enactment by virtue of which it is exercising jurisdiction and of any other enactment appearing to it to be relevant.
- (4) A tribunal may give directions under its general power whether or not they were originally sought by a party to the proceedings.
- (5) When exercising jurisdiction under this Act, the directions which may be given by a tribunal under its general power include (where appropriate)—
  - (a) directions requiring a licence to be granted under Part 2 or 3 of this Act;
  - (b) directions requiring any licence so granted to contain such terms as are specified in the directions;
  - (c) directions requiring any order made under Part 4 of this Act to contain such terms as are so specified;
  - (d) directions that any building or part of a building so specified is to be treated as if an HMO declaration had been served in respect of it on such date

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

as is so specified (without there being any right to appeal against it under section 255(9));

- (e) directions requiring the payment of money by one party to the proceedings to another by way of compensation, damages or otherwise.

[<sup>F146</sup>(5ZA) When exercising jurisdiction under the Caravan Sites and Control of Development Act 1960, the directions which may be given by a tribunal under its general power include (where appropriate) directions requiring the payment of money by one party to the proceedings to another by way of compensation, damages or otherwise.]

[<sup>F147</sup>(5A) When exercising jurisdiction under the Mobile Homes Act 1983 [<sup>F148</sup>or Part 4 of the Mobile Homes (Wales) Act 2013], the directions which may be given by a tribunal under its general power include (where appropriate)—

- (a) directions requiring the payment of money by one party to the proceedings to another by way of compensation, damages or otherwise;
- (b) directions requiring the arrears of pitch fees or the recovery of overpayments of pitch fees to be paid in such manner and by such date as may be specified in the directions;
- (c) directions requiring cleaning, repairs, restoration, re-positioning or other works to be carried out in connection with a mobile home, pitch or the protected site in such manner as may be specified in the directions;
- (d) directions requiring the establishment, provision or maintenance of any service or amenity in connection with a mobile home, pitch or protected site in such manner as may be specified in the directions.

(5B) In subsection (5A)—

“mobile home” and “protected site” have the same meaning as in the Mobile Homes 1983 (see section 5 of that Act [<sup>F149</sup>or the Mobile Homes (Wales) Act 2013 (see sections 2 and 60 of that Act)] );

“pitch” has the meaning given by paragraph 1(4) of Chapter 1 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to [<sup>F150</sup>the Mobile Homes Act 1983 or section 55 of the Mobile Homes (Wales) Act 2013 ] ;

“pitch fee” has the meaning given in paragraph 29 of Chapter 2, paragraph 13 of Chapter 3, or paragraph 27 of Chapter 4, of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to [<sup>F151</sup>the Mobile Homes Act 1983 (as the case may be) or section 60 of the Mobile Homes (Wales) Act 2013] .]

- (6) Nothing in any enactment conferring specific powers on a residential property tribunal is to be regarded as affecting the operation of the preceding provisions of this section.
- (7) Schedule 13 (residential property tribunals: procedure) has effect.
- (8) Section 229(5) applies also for the purposes of this section and Schedule 13.

#### Textual Amendments

**F145** Words in s. 230(1) inserted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 174** (with Sch. 3)

**F146** S. 230(5ZA) inserted (1.4.2014) by [Mobile Homes Act 2013 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 7(2)**, 15(1)

**F147** S. 230(5A)(5B) inserted (30.4.2011) by [The Mobile Homes Act 1983 \(Jurisdiction of Residential Property Tribunals\) \(England\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1005\)](#), arts. 1(1), **4(2)** and said subsections inserted (21.3.2012) by [The Mobile Homes Act 1983 \(Jurisdiction of Residential Property Tribunals\) \(Wales\) Order 2012 \(S.I. 2012/899\)](#), arts. 1(1), **4(2)** (with art. 5)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F148** Words in s. 230(5A) inserted (5.11.2013) by [Mobile Homes \(Wales\) Act 2013 \(anaw 6\), s. 64\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 9\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 5 para. 7](#)) (this amendment is to be treated as not having effect until 1.10.2014 by virtue of [S.I. 2014/11, art. 3\(2\)](#))
- F149** Words in s. 230(5B) inserted (5.11.2013) by [Mobile Homes \(Wales\) Act 2013 \(anaw 6\), s. 64\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 9\(2\)\(c\)\(i\)](#) (with [Sch. 5 para. 7](#)) (this amendment is to be treated as not having effect until 1.10.2014 by virtue of [S.I. 2014/11, art. 3\(2\)](#))
- F150** Words in s. 230(5B) substituted (5.11.2013) by [Mobile Homes \(Wales\) Act 2013 \(anaw 6\), s. 64\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 9\(2\)\(c\)\(ii\)](#) (with [Sch. 5 para. 7](#)) (this amendment is to be treated as not having effect until 1.10.2014 by virtue of [S.I. 2014/11, art. 3\(2\)](#))
- F151** Words in s. 230(5B) substituted (5.11.2013) by [Mobile Homes \(Wales\) Act 2013 \(anaw 6\), s. 64\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 9\(2\)\(c\)\(iii\)](#) (with [Sch. 5 para. 7](#)) (this amendment is to be treated as not having effect until 1.10.2014 by virtue of [S.I. 2014/11, art. 3\(2\)](#))

---

#### Commencement Information

- I172** S. 230 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 230 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 230 in force for E. at 4.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1729, art. 2\(a\)](#) (subject to [art. 3](#)); s. 230 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### 231 Appeals from residential property tribunals

- (1) A party to proceedings before a residential property tribunal may appeal to the <sup>F152</sup>Upper Tribunal] from a decision of the residential property tribunal.
- <sup>F153</sup>(2) But the appeal may only be made with the permission of the residential property tribunal or the Upper Tribunal.]
- (3) On the appeal—
- (a) the <sup>F154</sup>Upper Tribunal] may exercise any power which was available to the residential property tribunal, and
  - (b) a decision of the <sup>F154</sup>Upper Tribunal] may be enforced in the same way as a decision of the residential property tribunal.
- <sup>F155</sup>(4) Section 65A of the Rent Act 1977 (right of appeal from a rent assessment committee in Wales) does not apply to a decision of a residential property tribunal.)]
- (5) <sup>F156</sup> .....

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F152** Words in s. 231(1) substituted (1.6.2009) by [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\), art. 5\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 276\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 5](#))
- F153** S. 231(2) substituted (1.6.2009) by [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\), art. 5\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 276\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 5](#))
- F154** Words in s. 231(3) substituted (1.6.2009) by [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\), art. 5\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 276\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 5](#))
- F155** S. 231(4) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 175](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))
- F156** S. 231(5) omitted (1.6.2009) by virtue of [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\), art. 5\(1\)\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 276\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 5](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C13** S. 231 excluded by [Housing Act 1985 \(c. 68\), Sch. 5 para. 11\(5B\)](#) (as inserted (4.7.2005 (E.) and prosp. (W.)) by [Housing Act 2004 \(c. 34\), ss. 181\(3\), 270\(4\)\(5\)\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2005/1729, art. 2\(a\)](#) (subject to [art. 3](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I173** S. 231 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 231 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 231 in force for E. at 4.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1729, art. 2\(a\)](#) (subject to [art. 3](#)); s. 231 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with Sch.)

### [<sup>F157</sup>First-tier Tribunal and Upper Tribunal

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** Ss. 231A-231D inserted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\), art. 1, Sch. 1 para. 176](#) (with Sch. 3)

### 231A. Additional Powers of First-tier Tribunal and Upper Tribunal

- (1) The First-tier Tribunal and Upper Tribunal exercising any jurisdiction conferred by or under [<sup>F158</sup>the Caravan Sites and Control of Development Act 1960,] the Mobile Homes Act 1983, the Housing Act 1985 or this Act has, in addition to any specific powers exercisable by them in exercising that jurisdiction, the general power mentioned in subsection (2).
- (2) The tribunal's general power is a power to give such directions as the tribunal considers necessary or desirable for securing the just, expeditious and economical disposal of the proceedings or any issue in or in connection with them.
- (3) When exercising jurisdiction under this Act, the directions which may be given by the tribunal under its general power include (where appropriate)—
  - (a) directions requiring a licence to be granted under Part 2 or 3 of this Act;
  - (b) directions requiring any licence so granted to contain such terms as are specified in the directions;
  - (c) directions requiring any order made under Part 4 of this Act to contain such terms as are so specified;
  - (d) directions that any building or part of a building so specified is to be treated as if an HMO declaration had been served in respect of it on such date as is so specified (and such a direction is to be an excluded decision for the purposes of section 11(1) and 13(1) of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007);
  - (e) directions requiring the payment of money by one party to the proceedings to another by way of compensation, damages or otherwise.

[ When exercising jurisdiction under the Caravan Sites and Control of Development <sup>F159</sup>(3A) Act 1960, the directions which may be given by a tribunal under its general power include (where appropriate) directions requiring the payment of money by one party to the proceedings to another by way of compensation, damages or otherwise.]

- (4) When exercising jurisdiction under the Mobile Homes Act 1983, the directions which may be given by the tribunal under its general power include (where appropriate)—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) directions requiring the payment of money by one party to the proceedings to another by way of compensation, damages or otherwise;
- (b) directions requiring the arrears of pitch fees or the recovery of overpayments of pitch fees to be paid in such manner and by such date as may be specified in the directions;
- (c) directions requiring cleaning, repairs, restoration, re-positioning or other works to be carried out in connection with a mobile home, pitch or protected site in such manner as may be specified in the directions;
- (d) directions requiring the establishment, provision or maintenance of any service or amenity in connection with a mobile home, pitch or protected site in such manner as may be specified in the directions.

(5) In subsection (4)—

“mobile home” and “protected site” have the same meaning as in the Mobile Homes Act 1983 (see section 5 of that Act);

“pitch” has the meaning given by paragraph 1(4) of Chapter 1 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to that Act;

“pitch fee” has the meaning given in paragraph 29 of Chapter 2, paragraph 13 of Chapter 3, or paragraph 27 of Chapter 4, of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to that Act, as the case may be.

#### Textual Amendments

**F158** Words in s. 231A(1) inserted (18.7.2014) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Mobile Homes Act 2013 and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1900\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 13\(a\)](#)

**F159** S. 231A(3A) inserted (18.7.2014) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Mobile Homes Act 2013 and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1900\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 13\(b\)](#)

### 231B. Transfer from court to First-tier Tribunal

- (1) Where, in any proceedings before a court, there falls for determination a question which the First-tier Tribunal or the Upper Tribunal would have jurisdiction to determine on an appeal or application to the tribunal in connection with the Mobile Homes Act 1983, the Housing Act 1985 or this Act, the court—
  - (a) may by order transfer to the First-tier Tribunal so much of the proceedings as relate to the determination of that question;
  - (b) may then dispose of all or any remaining proceedings pending the determination of that question by the First-tier Tribunal or the Upper Tribunal, as it thinks fit.
- (2) Where the First-tier Tribunal or the Upper Tribunal has determined the question, the court may give effect to the determination in an order of the court.
- (3) Rules of court may prescribe the procedure to be followed in a court in connection with or in consequence of a transfer under this section
- (4) Nothing in this Act [<sup>F160</sup>, in the Caravan Sites and Control of Development Act 1960] or in the Mobile Homes Act 1983 affects any power of a court to make an order that could be made by the tribunal (such as an order quashing a licence granted or order made by a local housing authority) in a case where—
  - (a) the court has not made a transfer under this paragraph, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) the order is made by the court in connection with disposing of any proceedings before it.

#### Textual Amendments

**F160** Words in s. 231B(4) inserted (18.7.2014) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Mobile Homes Act 2013 and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1900\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 14**

### 231C. Appeals from the First-tier Tribunal

- (1) A person aggrieved by a decision of the First-tier Tribunal made under or in connection with—
- [ the Caravan Sites and Control of Development Act 1960,]  
<sup>F161</sup>(za)
- (a) the Mobile Homes Act 1983,  
 (b) the Housing Act 1985 (other than one made under paragraph 11 of Schedule 5 to that Act), or  
 (c) this Act,
- may appeal to the Upper Tribunal.
- (2) An appeal may not be brought under subsection (1) in relation to a decision on a point of law (as to which see instead section 11 of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 (right of appeal to Upper Tribunal)).
- (3) An appeal may not be brought under subsection (1) if the decision is set aside under section 9 of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 (review of decision of First-tier Tribunal).
- (4) An appeal may be brought under subsection (1) only if, on an application made by the person concerned, the First-tier Tribunal or Upper Tribunal has given its permission for the appeal to be brought.
- (5) In any case where the Upper Tribunal is determining an appeal under subsection (1), section 12(2) to (4) of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 (proceedings on appeal to the Upper Tribunal) apply.

#### Textual Amendments

**F161** S. 231C(1)(za) inserted (18.7.2014) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Mobile Homes Act 2013 and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1900\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 15**

### 231D. Enforcement

Any decision of the First-tier Tribunal or Upper Tribunal under or in connection with [<sup>F162</sup>the Caravan Sites and Control of Development Act 1960,] the Mobile Homes Act 1983, the Housing Act 1985 or this Act, other than a decision ordering the payment of a sum (as to which see section 27 (enforcement) of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007), is to be enforceable with the permission of a county court in the same way as orders of such a court.]

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

**F162** Words in s. 231D inserted (18.7.2014) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Mobile Homes Act 2013 and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1900\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 16](#)

## *Register of licences and management orders*

### **232 Register of licences and management orders**

- (1) Every local housing authority must establish and maintain a register of—
  - (a) all licences granted by them under Part 2 or 3 which are in force;
  - (b) all temporary exemption notices served by them under section 62 or section 86 which are in force; and
  - (c) all management orders made by them under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4 which are in force.
- (2) The register may, subject to any requirements that may be prescribed, be in such form as the authority consider appropriate.
- (3) Each entry in the register is to contain such particulars as may be prescribed.
- (4) The authority must ensure that the contents of the register are available at the authority's head office for inspection by members of the public at all reasonable times.
- (5) If requested by a person to do so and subject to payment of such reasonable fee (if any) as the authority may determine, a local housing authority must supply the person with a copy (certified to be true) of the register or of an extract from it.
- (6) A copy so certified is prima facie evidence of the matters mentioned in it.
- (7) In this section “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.

### Commencement Information

**I174** S. 232 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 232 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent see s. 270(2) (b); s. 232 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 232 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## *Codes of practice and management regulations relating to HMOs etc.*

### **233 Approval of codes of practice with regard to the management of HMOs etc.**

- (1) The appropriate national authority may by order—
  - (a) approve a code of practice (whether prepared by that authority or another person) laying down standards of conduct and practice to be followed with regard to the management of houses in multiple occupation or of excepted accommodation;
  - (b) approve a modification of such a code; or
  - (c) withdraw the authority's approval of such a code or modification.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) Before approving a code of practice or a modification of a code of practice under this section the appropriate national authority must take reasonable steps to consult—
  - (a) persons involved in the management of houses in multiple occupation or (as the case may be) excepted accommodation of the kind in question and persons occupying such houses or accommodation, or
  - (b) persons whom the authority considers to represent the interests of those persons.
- (3) The appropriate national authority may only approve a code of practice or a modification of a code if satisfied that—
  - (a) the code or modification has been published (whether by the authority or by another person) in a manner that the authority considers appropriate for the purpose of bringing the code or modification to the attention of those likely to be affected by it; or
  - (b) arrangements have been made for the code or modification to be so published.
- (4) The appropriate national authority may approve a code of practice which makes different provision in relation to different cases or descriptions of case (including different provision for different areas).
- (5) A failure to comply with a code of practice for the time being approved under this section does not of itself make a person liable to any civil or criminal proceedings.
- (6) In this section “excepted accommodation” means such description of living accommodation falling within any provision of Schedule 14 (buildings which are not HMOs for purposes of provisions other than Part 1) as is specified in an order under subsection (1).

## 234 Management regulations in respect of HMOs

- (1) The appropriate national authority may by regulations make provision for the purpose of ensuring that, in respect of every house in multiple occupation of a description specified in the regulations—
  - (a) there are in place satisfactory management arrangements; and
  - (b) satisfactory standards of management are observed.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular—
  - (a) impose duties on the person managing a house in respect of the repair, maintenance, cleanliness and good order of the house and facilities and equipment in it;
  - (b) impose duties on persons occupying a house for the purpose of ensuring that the person managing the house can effectively carry out any duty imposed on him by the regulations.
- (3) A person commits an offence if he fails to comply with a regulation under this section.
- (4) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (3) it is a defence that he had a reasonable excuse for not complying with the regulation.
- (5) A person who commits an offence under subsection (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- [<sup>F163</sup>(6) See also section 249A (financial penalties as alternative to prosecution for certain housing offences in England).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (7) If a local housing authority has imposed a financial penalty on a person under section 249A in respect of conduct amounting to an offence under this section the person may not be convicted of an offence under this section in respect of the conduct.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F163** S. 234(6)(7) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 9 para. 6](#); S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(f)

### Information provisions

#### 235 Power to require documents to be produced

- (1) A person authorised in writing by a local housing authority may exercise the power conferred by subsection (2) in relation to documents reasonably required by the authority—
- (a) for any purpose connected with the exercise of any of the authority’s functions under any of Parts 1 to 4 in relation to any premises, or
  - (b) for the purpose of investigating whether any offence has been committed under any of those Parts in relation to any premises.
- (2) A person so authorised may give a notice to a relevant person requiring him—
- (a) to produce any documents which—
    - (i) are specified or described in the notice, or fall within a category of document which is specified or described in the notice, and
    - (ii) are in his custody or under his control, and
  - (b) to produce them at a time and place so specified and to a person so specified.
- (3) The notice must include information about the possible consequences of not complying with the notice.
- (4) The person to whom any document is produced in accordance with the notice may copy the document.
- (5) No person may be required under this section to produce any document which he would be entitled to refuse to provide in proceedings in the High Court on grounds of legal professional privilege.
- (6) In this section “document” includes information recorded otherwise than in legible form, and in relation to information so recorded, any reference to the production of a document is a reference to the production of a copy of the information in legible form.
- (7) In this section “relevant person” means, in relation to any premises, a person within any of the following paragraphs—
- (a) a person who is, or is proposed to be, the holder of a licence under Part 2 or 3 in respect of the premises, or a person on whom any obligation or restriction under such a licence is, or is proposed to be, imposed,
  - (b) a person who has an estate or interest in the premises,
  - (c) a person who is, or is proposing to be, managing or having control of the premises,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (d) a person who is, or is proposing to be, otherwise involved in the management of the premises,
- (e) a person who occupies the premises.

**Commencement Information**

**I175** S. 235 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 235 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 235 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 235 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

**236 Enforcement of powers to obtain information**

- (1) A person commits an offence if he fails to do anything required of him by a notice under section 235.
- (2) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1) it is a defence that he had a reasonable excuse for failing to comply with the notice.
- (3) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (4) A person commits an offence if he intentionally alters, suppresses or destroys any document which he has been required to produce by a notice under section 235.
- (5) A person who commits an offence under subsection (4) is liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.
- (6) In this section “document” includes information recorded otherwise than in legible form, and in relation to information so recorded—
  - (a) the reference to the production of a document is a reference to the production of a copy of the information in legible form, and
  - (b) the reference to suppressing a document includes a reference to destroying the means of reproducing the information.

**Commencement Information**

**I176** S. 236 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 236 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 236 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060, art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 236 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

**237 Use of information obtained for certain other statutory purposes**

- (1) A local housing authority may use any information to which this section applies—
  - (a) for any purpose connected with the exercise of any of the authority’s functions under any of Parts 1 to 4 in relation to any premises, or
  - (b) for the purpose of investigating whether any offence has been committed under any of those Parts in relation to any premises.
- (2) This section applies to any information which has been obtained by the authority in the exercise of functions under—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) section 134 of the Social Security Administration Act 1992 (c. 5) (housing benefit), or
- (b) Part 1 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992 (c. 14) (council tax).

[<sup>F164</sup>(3) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend this section so as to change the list of purposes for which a local housing authority in England may use information to which it applies.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F164** S. 237(3) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 129(2)**, 216(3); [S.I. 2017/281](#), **reg. 4(g)**

#### Commencement Information

**I177** S. 237 wholly in force at 25.11.2005; s. 237 not force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 237 in force for E. at 15.6.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1451](#), **art. 3(e)**; s. 237 in force for W. at 25.11.2005 by [S.I. 2005/3237](#), **art. 2(h)**

## 238 False or misleading information

- (1) A person commits an offence if—
  - (a) he supplies any information to a local housing authority in connection with any of their functions under any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part,
  - (b) the information is false or misleading, and
  - (c) he knows that it is false or misleading or is reckless as to whether it is false or misleading.
- (2) A person commits an offence if—
  - (a) he supplies any information to another person which is false or misleading,
  - (b) he knows that it is false or misleading or is reckless as to whether it is false or misleading, and
  - (c) he knows that the information is to be used for the purpose of supplying information to a local housing authority in connection with any of their functions under any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part.
- (3) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) or (2) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.
- (4) In this section “false or misleading” means false or misleading in any material respect.

#### Commencement Information

**I178** S. 238 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 238 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 238 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), **art. 2(1)(a)** (with [Sch.](#)); s. 238 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), **art. 2(a)** (with [Sch.](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## *Enforcement*

### **239 Powers of entry**

- (1) Subsection (3) applies where the local housing authority consider that a survey or examination of any premises is necessary and any of the following conditions is met —
  - (a) the authority consider that the survey or examination is necessary in order to carry out an inspection under section 4(1) or otherwise to determine whether any functions under any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part should be exercised in relation to the premises;
  - (b) the premises are (within the meaning of Part 1) specified premises in relation to an improvement notice or prohibition order;
  - (c) a management order is in force under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4 in respect of the premises.
  
- (2) Subsection (3) also applies where the proper officer of the local housing authority considers that a survey or examination of any premises is necessary in order to carry out an inspection under section 4(2).
  
- (3) Where this subsection applies—
  - (a) a person authorised by the local housing authority (in a case within subsection (1)), or
  - (b) the proper officer (in a case within subsection (2)),
 may enter the premises in question at any reasonable time for the purpose of carrying out a survey or examination of the premises.
  
- (4) If—
  - (a) an interim or final management order is in force under Chapter 1 of Part 4 in respect of any premises consisting of part of a house (“the relevant premises”), and
  - (b) another part of the house is excluded from the order by virtue of section 102(8) or 113(7),
 the power of entry conferred by subsection (3) is exercisable in relation to any premises comprised in that other part so far as is necessary for the purpose of carrying out a survey or examination of the relevant premises.
  
- (5) Before entering any premises in exercise of the power conferred by subsection (3), the authorised person or proper officer must have given at least 24 hours' notice of his intention to do so—
  - (a) to the owner of the premises (if known), and
  - (b) to the occupier (if any).
  
- (6) Subsection (7) applies where the local housing authority consider that any premises need to be entered for the purpose of ascertaining whether an offence has been committed under section 72, 95 or 234(3).
  
- (7) A person authorised by the local housing authority may enter the premises for that purpose—
  - (a) at any reasonable time, but
  - (b) without giving any prior notice as mentioned in subsection (5).



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (8) A person exercising the power of entry conferred by subsection (3) or (7) may do such of the following as he thinks necessary for the purpose for which the power is being exercised—
- (a) take other persons with him;
  - (b) take equipment or materials with him;
  - (c) take measurements or photographs or make recordings;
  - (d) leave recording equipment on the premises for later collection;
  - (e) take samples of any articles or substances found on the premises.
- (9) An authorisation for the purposes of this section—
- (a) must be in writing; and
  - (b) must state the particular purpose or purposes for which the entry is authorised.
- (10) A person authorised for the purposes of this section must, if required to do so, produce his authorisation for inspection by the owner or any occupier of the premises or anyone acting on his behalf.
- (11) If the premises are unoccupied or the occupier is temporarily absent, a person exercising the power of entry conferred by subsection (3) or (7) must leave the premises as effectively secured against trespassers as he found them.
- (12) In this section “occupier”, in relation to premises, means a person who occupies the premises, whether for residential or other purposes.

#### Commencement Information

**I179** S. 239 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 239 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 239 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 239 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## 240 Warrant to authorise entry

- (1) This section applies where a justice of the peace is satisfied, on a sworn information in writing, that admission to premises specified in the information is reasonably required for any of the purposes mentioned in subsection (2) by a person—
- (a) employed by, or
  - (b) acting on the instructions of,
- the local housing authority.
- (2) The purposes are—
- (a) surveying or examining premises in order to carry out an inspection under section 4(1) or (2) or otherwise to determine whether any functions under any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part should be exercised in relation to the premises;
  - (b) surveying or examining premises—
    - (i) which are (within the meaning of Part 1) specified premises in relation to an improvement notice or prohibition order, or
    - (ii) in respect of which a management order is in force under Chapter 1 or 2 of Part 4;
  - (c) ascertaining whether an offence has been committed under section 72, 95 or 234(3).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The justice may by warrant under his hand authorise the person mentioned in subsection (1) to enter on the premises for such of those purposes as may be specified in the warrant.
- (4) But the justice must not grant the warrant unless he is satisfied—
  - (a) that admission to the premises has been sought in accordance with section 239(5) or (7) but has been refused;
  - (b) that the premises are unoccupied or that the occupier is temporarily absent and it might defeat the purpose of the entry to await his return; or
  - (c) that application for admission would defeat the purpose of the entry.
- (5) The power of entry conferred by a warrant under this section includes power to enter by force (if necessary).
- (6) Subsection (8) of section 239 applies to the person on whom that power is conferred as it applies to a person exercising the power of entry conferred by subsection (3) or (7) of that section.
- (7) A warrant under this section must, if so required, be produced for inspection by the owner or any occupier of the premises or anyone acting on his behalf.
- (8) If the premises are unoccupied or the occupier is temporarily absent, a person entering under the authority of a warrant under this section must leave the premises as effectively secured against trespassers as he found them.
- (9) A warrant under this section continues in force until the purpose for which the entry is required is satisfied.
- (10) In a case within section 239(4)(a) and (b), the powers conferred by this section are exercisable in relation to premises comprised in the excluded part of the house as well as in relation to the relevant premises.
- (11) In this section “occupier”, in relation to premises, means a person who occupies the premises, whether for residential or other purposes.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I180** S. 240 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 240 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 240 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 240 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

## **241 Penalty for obstruction**

- (1) A person who obstructs a relevant person in the performance of anything which, by virtue of any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part, that person is required or authorised to do commits an offence.
- (2) In proceedings against a person for an offence under subsection (1) it is a defence that he had a reasonable excuse for obstructing the relevant person.
- (3) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) In this section “relevant person” means an officer of a local housing authority or any person authorised to enter premises by virtue of any of Parts 1 to 4 or section 239 or 240.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I181** S. 241 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 241 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 241 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 241 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

**242 Additional notice requirements for protection of owners**

- (1) This section applies where an owner of premises gives a notice to the local housing authority for the purposes of this section informing them of his interest in the premises.
- (2) The authority must give him notice of any action taken by them under any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part in relation to the premises.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I182** S. 242 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 242 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 242 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 242 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

*Authorisations*

**243 Authorisations for enforcement purposes etc.**

- (1) This section applies to any authorisation given for the purposes of any of the following provisions—
- (a) section 131 (management orders: power of entry to carry out work),
  - (b) section 235 (power to require documents to be produced),
  - (c) section 239 (powers of entry),
  - (d) paragraph 3(4) of Schedule 3 (improvement notices: power to enter to carry out work), and
  - (e) paragraph 25 of Schedule 7 (EDMOs: power of entry to carry out work).
- (2) Any such authorisation must be given by the appropriate officer of the local housing authority.
- (3) For the purposes of this section a person is an “appropriate officer” of a local housing authority, in relation to an authorisation given by the authority, if either—
- (a) he is a deputy chief officer of the authority (within the meaning of section 2 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c. 42)), and
  - (b) the duties of his post consist of or include duties relating to the exercise of the functions of the authority in connection with which the authorisation is given,
- or he is an officer of the authority to whom such a deputy chief officer reports directly, or is directly accountable, as respects duties so relating.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

#### Commencement Information

**I183** S. 243 wholly in force at 16.6.2006; s. 243 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(3); s. 243 in force for E. at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 243 in force for W. at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

### Documents

#### 244 Power to prescribe forms

- (1) The appropriate national authority may by regulations prescribe the form of any notice, statement or other document which is required or authorised to be used under, or for the purposes of, this Act.
- (2) The power conferred by this section is not exercisable where specific provision for prescribing the form of a document is made elsewhere in this Act [<sup>F165</sup>or in relation to a document given or made by the First-tier Tribunal or Upper Tribunal].

#### Textual Amendments

**F165** Words in s. 244(2) inserted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), [art. 1](#), [Sch. 1 para. 177](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

#### 245 Power to dispense with notices

- (1) The appropriate national authority may dispense with the service of a notice which is required to be served by a local housing authority under this Act if satisfied that it is reasonable to do so.
- (2) A dispensation may be given either before or after the time at which the notice is required to be served.
- (3) A dispensation may be given either unconditionally or on such conditions (whether as to the service of other notices or otherwise) as the appropriate national authority considers appropriate.
- (4) Before giving a dispensation under this section, the appropriate national authority shall, in particular, have regard to the need to ensure, so far as possible, that the interests of any person are not prejudiced by the dispensation.

#### 246 Service of documents

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where the local housing authority is, by virtue of any provision of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part, under a duty to serve a document on a person who, to the knowledge of the authority, is—
  - (a) a person having control of premises,
  - (b) a person managing premises, or
  - (c) a person having an estate or interest in premises,
 or a person who (but for an interim or final management order under Chapter 1 of Part 4) would fall within paragraph (a) or (b).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) The local housing authority must take reasonable steps to identify the person or persons falling within the description in that provision.
- (3) A person having an estate or interest in premises may for the purposes of any provision to which subsections (1) and (2) apply give notice to the local housing authority of his interest in the premises.
- (4) The local housing authority must enter a notice under subsection (3) in its records.
- (5) A document required or authorised by any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part to be served on a person as—
  - (a) a person having control of premises,
  - (b) a person managing premises,
  - (c) a person having an estate or interest in premises, or
  - (d) a person who (but for an interim or final management order under Chapter 1 of Part 4) would fall within paragraph (a) or (b),may, if it is not practicable after reasonable enquiry to ascertain the name or address of that person, be served in accordance with subsection (6).
- (6) A person having such a connection with any premises as is mentioned in subsection (5) (a) to (d) is served in accordance with this subsection if—
  - (a) the document is addressed to him by describing his connection with the premises (naming them), and
  - (b) delivering the document to some person on the premises or, if there is no person on the premises to whom it can be delivered, by fixing it, or a copy of it, to some conspicuous part of the premises.
- (7) Subsection (1)(c) or (5)(c) applies whether the provision requiring or authorising service of the document refers in terms to a person having an estate or interest in premises or instead refers to a class of person having such an estate or interest (such as owners, lessees or mortgagees).
- (8) Where under any provision of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part a document is to be served on—
  - (a) the person having control of premises,
  - (b) the person managing premises, or
  - (c) the owner of premises,and more than one person comes within the description in the provision, the document may be served on more than one of those persons.
- (9) Section 233 of the Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70) (service of notices by local authorities) applies in relation to the service of documents for any purposes of this Act by the authorities mentioned in section 261(2)(d) and (e) of this Act as if they were local authorities within the meaning of section 233.
- (10) In this section—
  - (a) references to a person managing premises include references to a person authorised to permit persons to occupy premises; and
  - (b) references to serving include references to similar expressions (such as giving or sending).
- (11) In this section—

“document” includes anything in writing;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“premises” means premises however defined.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C14** S. 246 applied by [Housing Act 1985 \(c. 68\)](#), s. 268 (as substituted (6.4.2006 (E.) and 16.6.2006 (W.)) by [Housing Act 2004 \(c. 34\)](#), ss. 265(1), 270(4)(5)(f), [Sch. 15 para. 13](#)); S.I. 2006/1060, [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#) (with Sch.); S.I. 2006/1535, [art. 2\(b\)](#) (with Sch.)

**247 Licences and other documents in electronic form**

- (1) A local housing authority may, subject to subsection (3), issue a licence to a person under Part 2 or 3 by transmitting the text of the licence to him by electronic means, provided the text—
  - (a) is received by him in legible form, and
  - (b) is capable of being used for subsequent reference.
- (2) A local housing authority may, subject to subsection (3), serve a relevant document on a person by transmitting the text of the document to him in the way mentioned in subsection (1).
- (3) The recipient, or the person on whose behalf the recipient receives the document, must have indicated to the local housing authority the recipient’s willingness to receive documents transmitted in the form and manner used.
- (4) An indication for the purposes of subsection (3)—
  - (a) must be given to the local housing authority in such manner as they may require;
  - (b) may be a general indication or one that is limited to documents of a particular description;
  - (c) must state the address to be used and must be accompanied by such other information as the local housing authority require for the making of the transmission; and
  - (d) may be modified or withdrawn at any time by a notice given to the local housing authority in such manner as they may require.
- (5) In this section any reference to serving includes a reference to similar expressions (such as giving or sending).
- (6) In this section—
 

“document” includes anything in writing; and

“relevant document” means any document which a local housing authority are, by virtue of any provision of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part, under a duty to serve on any person.

**248 Timing and location of things done electronically**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision specifying, for the purposes of any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part, the manner of determining—
  - (a) the times at which things done under any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part by means of electronic communications networks are done;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the places at which things done under any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part by means of such networks are done; and
  - (c) the places at which things transmitted by means of such networks are received.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the manner of proving in any legal proceedings—
  - (a) that something done by means of an electronic communications network satisfies any requirements of any of Parts 1 to 4 or this Part for the doing of that thing; and
  - (b) the matters mentioned in subsection (1)(a) to (c).
- (3) Regulations under this section may provide for such presumptions to apply (whether conclusive or not) as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (4) In this section “electronic communications network” has the meaning given by section 32 of the Communications Act 2003 (c. 21).

## 249 Proof of designations

- (1) This subsection applies in respect of a copy of—
  - (a) a designation under section 56 (designation of an area as subject to additional licensing), or
  - (b) a designation under section 80 (designation of an area as subject to selective licensing),which purports to be made by a local housing authority.
- (2) A certificate endorsed on such a copy and purporting to be signed by the proper officer of the authority stating the matters set out in subsection (3) is prima facie evidence of the facts so stated without proof of the handwriting or official position of the person by whom it purports to be signed.
- (3) Those matters are—
  - (a) that the designation was made by the authority,
  - (b) that the copy is a true copy of the designation, and
  - (c) that the designation did not require confirmation by the confirming authority, or that on a specified date the designation was confirmed by the confirming authority.

*[<sup>F166</sup>Financial penalties as alternative to prosecution*

### Textual Amendments

**F166** S. 249A and cross-heading inserted (10.3.2017 for specified purposes, 6.4.2017 in so far as not already in force) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 216(3), [Sch. 9 para. 7](#); S.I. 2017/281, regs. 3(b), 4(f)

## 249A Financial penalties for certain housing offences in England

- (1) The local housing authority may impose a financial penalty on a person if satisfied, beyond reasonable doubt, that the person's conduct amounts to a relevant housing offence in respect of premises in England.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) In this section “relevant housing offence” means an offence under—
- (a) section 30 (failure to comply with improvement notice),
  - (b) section 72 (licensing of HMOs),
  - (c) section 95 (licensing of houses under Part 3),
  - (d) section 139(7) (failure to comply with overcrowding notice), or
  - (e) section 234 (management regulations in respect of HMOs).
- (3) Only one financial penalty under this section may be imposed on a person in respect of the same conduct.
- (4) The amount of a financial penalty imposed under this section is to be determined by the local housing authority, but must not be more than £30,000.
- (5) The local housing authority may not impose a financial penalty in respect of any conduct amounting to a relevant housing offence if—
- (a) the person has been convicted of the offence in respect of that conduct, or
  - (b) criminal proceedings for the offence have been instituted against the person in respect of the conduct and the proceedings have not been concluded.
- (6) Schedule 13A deals with—
- (a) the procedure for imposing financial penalties,
  - (b) appeals against financial penalties,
  - (c) enforcement of financial penalties, and
  - (d) guidance in respect of financial penalties.
- (7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about how local housing authorities are to deal with financial penalties recovered.
- (8) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend the amount specified in subsection (4) to reflect changes in the value of money.
- (9) For the purposes of this section a person's conduct includes a failure to act.]

*Other supplementary provisions*

**250 Orders and regulations**

- (1) Any power of the Secretary of State or the National Assembly for Wales to make an order or regulations under this Act is exercisable by statutory instrument.
- (2) Any power of the Secretary of State or the National Assembly for Wales to make an order or regulations under this Act—
  - (a) may be exercised so as to make different provision for different cases or descriptions of case or different purposes or areas; and
  - (b) includes power to make such incidental, supplementary, consequential, transitory, transitional or saving provision as the Secretary of State or (as the case may be) the National Assembly for Wales considers appropriate.
- <sup>F167</sup>(3) .....
- (4) Subject to subsections (5) and (6), any order or regulations made by the Secretary of State under this Act are to be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) Subsection (4) does not apply to any order under section 270 or paragraph 3 of Schedule 10.
- (6) Subsection (4) also does not apply to—
- (a) any order under section 55(3) which makes the provision authorised by section 55(4),
  - (b) any order under section 80(5) or (7),
  - [<sup>F168</sup>(ba) regulations under section 212A,]
  - (c) any order under section 216 or 229(3),
  - [<sup>F169</sup>(ca) regulations under section 237,]
  - (d) any order under section 265(2) which modifies any provision of an Act,
  - (e) any regulations under section 254(6),
  - (f) any regulations under paragraph 3 of Schedule 4 or orders under paragraph 11 of Schedule 10, or
  - (g) any regulations made by virtue of paragraph 11(3)(b) or 12(3)(b) of Schedule 13;
- and no such order or regulations may be made by the Secretary of State (whether alone or with other provisions) unless a draft of the statutory instrument containing the order or regulations has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (7) In this Act “modify”, in the context of a power to modify an enactment by order or regulations, includes repeal (and “modifications” has a corresponding meaning).

#### Textual Amendments

- F167** S. 250(3) repealed (15.1.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 240(1)(m), **Sch. 25 Pt. 29**
- F168** S. 250(6)(ba) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 128(4)**, 216(3); S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(g)
- F169** S. 250(6)(ca) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Housing and Planning Act 2016 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 129(3)**, 216(3); S.I. 2017/281, reg. 4(g)

## 251 Offences by bodies corporate

- (1) Where an offence under this Act committed by a body corporate is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of—
- (a) a director, manager, secretary or other similar officer of the body corporate, or
  - (b) a person purporting to act in such a capacity,
- he as well as the body corporate commits the offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (2) Where the affairs of a body corporate are managed by its members, subsection (1) applies in relation to the acts and defaults of a member in connection with his functions of management as if he were a director of the body corporate.

## 252 Power to up-rate level of fines for certain offences

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if the Secretary of State considers that there has been a change in the value of money since the relevant date.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The Secretary of State may by order substitute for the sum or sums for the time being specified in any provision mentioned in subsection (3) such other sum or sums as he considers to be justified by the change.
- (3) The provisions are—
  - (a) section 32(2)(b);
  - (b) section 35(6);
  - (c) section 72(6); and
  - (d) section 95(5).
- (4) In subsection (1) “the relevant date” means—
  - (a) the date of the passing of this Act; or
  - (b) where the sums specified in a provision mentioned in subsection (3) have been substituted by an order under subsection (2), the date of that order.
- (5) Nothing in an order under subsection (2) affects the punishment for an offence committed before the order comes into force.

### **253 Local inquiries**

The appropriate national authority may, for the purposes of the execution of any of the authority’s functions under this Act, cause such local inquiries to be held as the authority considers appropriate.

#### *Meaning of “house in multiple occupation”*

### **254 Meaning of “house in multiple occupation”**

- (1) For the purposes of this Act a building or a part of a building is a “house in multiple occupation” if—
  - (a) it meets the conditions in subsection (2) (“the standard test”);
  - (b) it meets the conditions in subsection (3) (“the self-contained flat test”);
  - (c) it meets the conditions in subsection (4) (“the converted building test”);
  - (d) an HMO declaration is in force in respect of it under section 255; or
  - (e) it is a converted block of flats to which section 257 applies.
- (2) A building or a part of a building meets the standard test if—
  - (a) it consists of one or more units of living accommodation not consisting of a self-contained flat or flats;
  - (b) the living accommodation is occupied by persons who do not form a single household (see section 258);
  - (c) the living accommodation is occupied by those persons as their only or main residence or they are to be treated as so occupying it (see section 259);
  - (d) their occupation of the living accommodation constitutes the only use of that accommodation;
  - (e) rents are payable or other consideration is to be provided in respect of at least one of those persons’ occupation of the living accommodation; and
  - (f) two or more of the households who occupy the living accommodation share one or more basic amenities or the living accommodation is lacking in one or more basic amenities.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) A part of a building meets the self-contained flat test if—
- (a) it consists of a self-contained flat; and
  - (b) paragraphs (b) to (f) of subsection (2) apply (reading references to the living accommodation concerned as references to the flat).
- (4) A building or a part of a building meets the converted building test if—
- (a) it is a converted building;
  - (b) it contains one or more units of living accommodation that do not consist of a self-contained flat or flats (whether or not it also contains any such flat or flats);
  - (c) the living accommodation is occupied by persons who do not form a single household (see section 258);
  - (d) the living accommodation is occupied by those persons as their only or main residence or they are to be treated as so occupying it (see section 259);
  - (e) their occupation of the living accommodation constitutes the only use of that accommodation; and
  - (f) rents are payable or other consideration is to be provided in respect of at least one of those persons' occupation of the living accommodation.
- (5) But for any purposes of this Act (other than those of Part 1) a building or part of a building within subsection (1) is not a house in multiple occupation if it is listed in Schedule 14.
- (6) The appropriate national authority may by regulations—
- (a) make such amendments of this section and sections 255 to 259 as the authority considers appropriate with a view to securing that any building or part of a building of a description specified in the regulations is or is not to be a house in multiple occupation for any specified purposes of this Act;
  - (b) provide for such amendments to have effect also for the purposes of definitions in other enactments that operate by reference to this Act;
  - (c) make such consequential amendments of any provision of this Act, or any other enactment, as the authority considers appropriate.
- (7) Regulations under subsection (6) may frame any description by reference to any matters or circumstances whatever.
- (8) In this section—
- “basic amenities” means—
- (a) a toilet,
  - (b) personal washing facilities, or
  - (c) cooking facilities;
- “converted building” means a building or part of a building consisting of living accommodation in which one or more units of such accommodation have been created since the building or part was constructed;
- “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30));
- “self-contained flat” means a separate set of premises (whether or not on the same floor)—
- (a) which forms part of a building;

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) either the whole or a material part of which lies above or below some other part of the building; and
- (c) in which all three basic amenities are available for the exclusive use of its occupants.

#### Commencement Information

**I184** S. 254 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 254 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

## 255 HMO declarations

- (1) If a local housing authority are satisfied that subsection (2) applies to a building or part of a building in their area, they may serve a notice under this section (an “HMO declaration”) declaring the building or part to be a house in multiple occupation.
- (2) This subsection applies to a building or part of a building if the building or part meets any of the following tests (as it applies without the sole use condition)—
  - (a) the standard test (see section 254(2)),
  - (b) the self-contained flat test (see section 254(3)), or
  - (c) the converted building test (see section 254(4)),
 and the occupation, by persons who do not form a single household, of the living accommodation or flat referred to in the test in question constitutes a significant use of that accommodation or flat.
- (3) In subsection (2) “the sole use condition” means the condition contained in—
  - (a) section 254(2)(d) (as it applies for the purposes of the standard test or the self-contained flat test), or
  - (b) section 254(4)(e),
 as the case may be.
- (4) The notice must—
  - (a) state the date of the authority’s decision to serve the notice,
  - (b) be served on each relevant person within the period of seven days beginning with the date of that decision,
  - (c) state the day on which it will come into force if no appeal is made under subsection (9) against the authority’s decision, and
  - (d) set out the right to appeal against the decision under subsection (9) and the period within which an appeal may be made.
- (5) The day stated in the notice under subsection (4)(c) must be not less than 28 days after the date of the authority’s decision to serve the notice.
- (6) If no appeal is made under subsection (9) before the end of that period of 28 days, the notice comes into force on the day stated in the notice.
- (7) If such an appeal is made before the end of that period of 28 days, the notice does not come into force unless and until a decision is given on the appeal which confirms the notice and either—
  - (a) the period within which an appeal to the [<sup>F170</sup>Upper Tribunal] may be brought expires without such an appeal having been brought, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) if an appeal to the [F170Upper Tribunal] is brought, a decision is given on the appeal which confirms the notice.
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (7), the withdrawal of an appeal has the same effect as a decision which confirms the notice appealed against.
- (9) Any relevant person may appeal to [F171the appropriate tribunal] against a decision of the local housing authority to serve an HMO declaration.
- The appeal must be made within the period of 28 days beginning with the date of the authority’s decision.
- (10) Such an appeal—
- (a) is to be by way of a re-hearing, but
  - (b) may be determined having regard to matters of which the authority were unaware.
- (11) The tribunal may—
- (a) confirm or reverse the decision of the authority, and
  - (b) if it reverses the decision, revoke the HMO declaration.
- (12) In this section and section 256 “relevant person”, in relation to an HMO declaration, means any person who, to the knowledge of the local housing authority, is—
- (a) a person having an estate or interest in the building or part of the building concerned (but is not a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years of less), or
  - (b) a person managing or having control of that building or part (and not falling within paragraph (a)).
- [F172(13) For the purposes of this section and section 256, “appropriate tribunal” means—
- (a) in relation to a building in England, the First-tier Tribunal or, where determined by or under Tribunal Procedure Rules, the Upper Tribunal; and
  - (b) in relation to a building in Wales, a residential property tribunal.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F170** Words in s. 255(7)(a)(b) substituted (1.6.2009) by [Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 1 para. 277** (with Sch. 5)
- F171** Words in s. 255(9) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 178(a)** (with Sch. 3)
- F172** S. 255(13) inserted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 178(b)** (with Sch. 3)

## 256 Revocation of HMO declarations

- (1) A local housing authority may revoke an HMO declaration served under section 255 at any time if they consider that subsection (2) of that section no longer applies to the building or part of the building in respect of which the declaration was served.
- (2) The power to revoke an HMO declaration is exercisable by the authority either—
- (a) on an application made by a relevant person, or
  - (b) on the authority’s own initiative.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) If, on an application by such a person, the authority decide not to revoke the HMO declaration, they must without delay serve on him a notice informing him of—
- (a) the decision,
  - (b) the reasons for it and the date on which it was made,
  - (c) the right to appeal against it under subsection (4), and
  - (d) the period within which an appeal may be made under that subsection.
- (4) A person who applies to a local housing authority for the revocation of an HMO declaration under subsection (1) may appeal to [<sup>F173</sup>the appropriate tribunal] against a decision of the authority to refuse to revoke the notice.

The appeal must be made within the period of 28 days beginning with the date specified under subsection (3) as the date on which the decision was made.

- (5) Such an appeal—
- (a) is to be by way of a re-hearing, but
  - (b) may be determined having regard to matters of which the authority were unaware.
- (6) The tribunal may—
- (a) confirm or reverse the decision of the authority, and
  - (b) if it reverses the decision, revoke the HMO declaration.

#### Textual Amendments

**F173** Words in s. 256(4) substituted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 179](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

## 257 HMOs: certain converted blocks of flats

- (1) For the purposes of this section a “converted block of flats” means a building or part of a building which—
- (a) has been converted into, and
  - (b) consists of, self-contained flats.
- (2) This section applies to a converted block of flats if—
- (a) building work undertaken in connection with the conversion did not comply with the appropriate building standards and still does not comply with them; and
  - (b) less than two-thirds of the self-contained flats are owner-occupied.
- (3) In subsection (2) “appropriate building standards” means—
- (a) in the case of a converted block of flats—
    - (i) on which building work was completed before 1st June 1992 or which is dealt with by regulation 20 of the Building Regulations 1991 (S.I. 1991/2768), and
    - (ii) which would not have been exempt under those Regulations,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- building standards equivalent to those imposed, in relation to a building or part of a building to which those Regulations applied, by those Regulations as they had effect on 1st June 1992; and
- (b) in the case of any other converted block of flats, the requirements imposed at the time in relation to it by regulations under section 1 of the Building Act 1984 (c. 55).
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (2) a flat is “owner-occupied” if it is occupied—
- (a) by a person who has a lease of the flat which has been granted for a term of more than 21 years,
- (b) by a person who has the freehold estate in the converted block of flats, or
- (c) by a member of the household of a person within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (5) The fact that this section applies to a converted block of flats (with the result that it is a house in multiple occupation under section 254(1)(e)), does not affect the status of any flat in the block as a house in multiple occupation.
- (6) In this section “self-contained flat” has the same meaning as in section 254.

## **258 HMOs: persons not forming a single household**

- (1) This section sets out when persons are to be regarded as not forming a single household for the purposes of section 254.
- (2) Persons are to be regarded as not forming a single household unless—
- (a) they are all members of the same family, or
- (b) their circumstances are circumstances of a description specified for the purposes of this section in regulations made by the appropriate national authority.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(a) a person is a member of the same family as another person if—
- (a) those persons are married to each other or live together as husband and wife (or in an equivalent relationship in the case of persons of the same sex);
- (b) one of them is a relative of the other; or
- (c) one of them is, or is a relative of, one member of a couple and the other is a relative of the other member of the couple.
- (4) For those purposes—
- (a) a “couple” means two persons who are married to each other or otherwise fall within subsection (3)(a);
- (b) “relative” means parent, grandparent, child, grandchild, brother, sister, uncle, aunt, nephew, niece or cousin;
- (c) a relationship of the half-blood shall be treated as a relationship of the whole blood; and
- (d) the stepchild of a person shall be treated as his child.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (2)(b) may, in particular, secure that a group of persons are to be regarded as forming a single household only where (as the regulations may require) each member of the group has a prescribed relationship, or at least one of a number of prescribed relationships, to any one or more of the others.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before  
 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have  
 been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) In subsection (5) “prescribed relationship” means any relationship of a description specified in the regulations.

**Commencement Information**

**I185** S. 258 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 258 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

**259 HMOs: persons treated as occupying premises as only or main residence**

- (1) This section sets out when persons are to be treated for the purposes of section 254 as occupying a building or part of a building as their only or main residence.
- (2) A person is to be treated as so occupying a building or part of a building if it is occupied by the person—
- (a) as the person’s residence for the purpose of undertaking a full-time course of further or higher education;
  - (b) as a refuge, or
  - (c) in any other circumstances which are circumstances of a description specified for the purposes of this section in regulations made by the appropriate national authority.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b) “refuge” means a building or part of a building managed by a voluntary organisation and used wholly or mainly for the temporary accommodation of persons who have left their homes as a result of—
- (a) physical violence or mental abuse, or
  - (b) threats of such violence or abuse,
- from persons to whom they are or were married or with whom they are or were co-habiting.

**Commencement Information**

**I186** S. 259 wholly in force at 18.1.2005; s. 259 in force for certain purposes at Royal Assent and in force otherwise at 18.1.2005, see s. 270(2)(b)(3)(a)

**260 HMOs: presumption that sole use condition or significant use condition is met**

- (1) Where a question arises in any proceedings as to whether either of the following is met in respect of a building or part of a building—
- (a) the sole use condition, or
  - (b) the significant use condition,
- it shall be presumed, for the purposes of the proceedings, that the condition is met unless the contrary is shown.
- (2) In this section—
- (a) “the sole use condition” means the condition contained in—
    - (i) section 254(2)(d) (as it applies for the purposes of the standard test or the self-contained flat test), or
    - (ii) section 254(4)(e),



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

as the case may be; and

- (b) “the significant use condition” means the condition contained in section 255(2) that the occupation of the living accommodation or flat referred to in that provision by persons who do not form a single household constitutes a significant use of that accommodation or flat.

*Other general interpretation provisions*

**261 Meaning of “appropriate national authority”, “local housing authority” etc.**

- (1) In this Act “the appropriate national authority” means—
- (a) in relation to England, the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) in relation to Wales, the National Assembly for Wales.
- (2) In this Act “local housing authority” means, in relation to England—
- (a) a unitary authority;
  - (b) a district council so far as it is not a unitary authority;
  - (c) a London borough council;
  - (d) the Common Council of the City of London (in its capacity as a local authority);
  - (e) the Sub-Treasurer of the Inner Temple or the Under-Treasurer of the Middle Temple (in his capacity as a local authority); and
  - (f) the Council of the Isles of Scilly.
- (3) In subsection (2) “unitary authority” means—
- (a) the council of a county so far as it is the council for an area for which there are no district councils;
  - (b) the council of any district comprised in an area for which there is no county council.
- (4) In this Act “local housing authority” means, in relation to Wales, a county council or a county borough council.
- (5) References in this Act to “the local housing authority”, in relation to land, are to the local housing authority in whose district the land is situated.
- (6) References in this Act to the district of a local housing authority are to the area of the council concerned, that is to say—
- (a) in the case of a unitary authority, the area or district;
  - (b) in the case of a district council so far as it is not a unitary authority, the district;
  - (c) in the case of an authority within subsection (2)(c) to (f), the London borough, the City of London, the Inner or Middle Temple or the Isles of Scilly (as the case may be); and
  - (d) in the case of a Welsh county council or a county borough council, the Welsh county or county borough.
- (7) Section 618 of the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68) (committees and members of Common Council of City of London) applies in relation to this Act as it applies in relation to that Act.

- [<sup>F174</sup>(8) In this Act “appropriate tribunal” means—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) in relation to premises in England, the First-tier Tribunal or, where determined by or under Tribunal Procedure Rules, the Upper Tribunal; and
- (b) in relation to premises in Wales, a residential property tribunal.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F174** S. 261(8) inserted (1.7.2013) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1036\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 180](#) (with [Sch. 3](#))

## 262 Meaning of “lease”, “tenancy”, “occupier” and “owner” etc.

- (1) In this Act “lease” and “tenancy” have the same meaning.
- (2) Both expressions include—
  - (a) a sub-lease or sub-tenancy; and
  - (b) an agreement for a lease or tenancy (or sub-lease or sub-tenancy).

And see sections 108 and 117 and paragraphs 3 and 11 of Schedule 7 (which also extend the meaning of references to leases).
- (3) The expressions “lessor” and “lessee” and “landlord” and “tenant” and references to letting, to the grant of a lease or to covenants or terms, are to be construed accordingly.
- (4) In this Act “lessee” includes a statutory tenant of the premises; and references to a lease or to a person to whom premises are let are to be construed accordingly.
- (5) In this Act any reference to a person who is a tenant under a lease with an unexpired term of 3 years or less includes a statutory tenant as well as a tenant under a yearly or other periodic tenancy.
- (6) In this Act “occupier”, in relation to premises, means a person who—
  - (a) occupies the premises as a residence, and
  - (b) (subject to the context) so occupies them whether as a tenant or other person having an estate or interest in the premises or as a licensee;

and related expressions are to be construed accordingly.

This subsection <sup>F175</sup>... has effect subject to any other provision defining “occupier” for any purposes of this Act.

- (7) In this Act “owner”, in relation to premises—
  - (a) means a person (other than a mortgagee not in possession) who is for the time being entitled to dispose of the fee simple of the premises whether in possession or in reversion; and
  - (b) includes also a person holding or entitled to the rents and profits of the premises under a lease of which the unexpired term exceeds 3 years.
- (8) In this Act “person having an estate or interest”, in relation to premises, includes a statutory tenant of the premises.
- (9) In this Act “licence”, in the context of a licence to occupy premises—
  - (a) includes a licence which is not granted for a consideration, but

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(b) excludes a licence granted as a temporary expedient to a person who entered the premises as a trespasser (whether or not, before the grant of the licence, another licence to occupy those or other premises had been granted to him); and related expressions are to be construed accordingly.

And see sections 108 and 117 and paragraphs 3 and 11 of Schedule 7 (which also extend the meaning of references to licences).

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F175** Words in s. 262(6) repealed (15.1.2012) by [Localism Act 2011 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 240(1)(m), [Sch. 25 Pt. 29](#)

### 263 Meaning of “person having control” and “person managing” etc.

- (1) In this Act “person having control”, in relation to premises, means (unless the context otherwise requires) the person who receives the rack-rent of the premises (whether on his own account or as agent or trustee of another person), or who would so receive it if the premises were let at a rack-rent.
- (2) In subsection (1) “rack-rent” means a rent which is not less than two-thirds of the full net annual value of the premises.
- (3) In this Act “person managing” means, in relation to premises, the person who, being an owner or lessee of the premises—
  - (a) receives (whether directly or through an agent or trustee) rents or other payments from—
    - (i) in the case of a house in multiple occupation, persons who are in occupation as tenants or licensees of parts of the premises; and
    - (ii) in the case of a house to which Part 3 applies (see section 79(2)), persons who are in occupation as tenants or licensees of parts of the premises, or of the whole of the premises; or
  - (b) would so receive those rents or other payments but for having entered into an arrangement (whether in pursuance of a court order or otherwise) with another person who is not an owner or lessee of the premises by virtue of which that other person receives the rents or other payments;and includes, where those rents or other payments are received through another person as agent or trustee, that other person.
- (4) In its application to Part 1, subsection (3) has effect with the omission of paragraph (a) (ii).
- (5) References in this Act to any person involved in the management of a house in multiple occupation or a house to which Part 3 applies (see section 79(2)) include references to the person managing it.

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C15** S. 263 modified (E.) (1.10.2007) by [The Houses in Multiple Occupation \(Certain Blocks of Flats\) \(Modifications to the Housing Act 2004 and Transitional Provisions for section 257 HMOs\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1904\)](#), [reg. 12\(1\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**C16** S. 263 modified (W.) (5.12.2007) by The Houses in [Multiple Occupation \(Certain Blocks of Flats\) \(Modifications to the Housing Act 2004 and Transitional Provisions for section 257 HMOs\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3231\)](#), [reg. 12\(1\)](#)

## 264 Calculation of numbers of persons

- (1) The appropriate national authority may prescribe rules with respect to the calculation of numbers of persons for the purposes of—
  - (a) any provision made by or under this Act which is specified in the rules, or
  - (b) any order or licence made or granted under this Act of any description which is so specified.
- (2) The rules may provide—
  - (a) for persons under a particular age to be disregarded for the purposes of any such calculation;
  - (b) for persons under a particular age to be treated as constituting a fraction of a person for the purposes of any such calculation.
- (3) The rules may be prescribed by order or regulations.

### *Final provisions*

## 265 Minor and consequential amendments

- (1) Schedule 15 (which contains minor and consequential amendments) has effect.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order make such supplementary, incidental or consequential provision as he considers appropriate—
  - (a) for the general purposes, or any particular purpose, of this Act; or
  - (b) in consequence of any provision made by or under this Act or for giving full effect to it.
- (3) An order under subsection (2) may modify any enactment (including this Act).  
 “Enactment” includes an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30)).
- (4) The power conferred by subsection (2) is also exercisable by the National Assembly for Wales in relation to provision dealing with matters with respect to which functions are exercisable by the Assembly.
- (5) Nothing in this Act affects the generality of the power conferred by this section.

### **Commencement Information**

**I187** S. 265 partly in force; s. 265(2)-(5) in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(2)(a); s. 265(1) in force for W. for certain purposes at 14.7.2005 by [S.I. 2005/1814](#), [art. 2\(d\)](#); s. 265(1) in force for E. for certain purposes at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 265(1) in force for W. for certain purposes at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#) (with [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#)); s. 265(1) in force for E. for certain purposes at 2.1.2007 by [S.I. 2006/3191](#), [art. 2\(c\)](#); s. 265(1) in force for W. for certain purposes at 13.12.2007 by [S.I. 2007/3232](#), [art. 2\(e\)](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 266 Repeals

Schedule 16 (which contains repeals) has effect.

### Commencement Information

**I188** S. 266 partly in force; s. 266 not in force at Royal Assent see s. 270(4)(5); s. 266 in force for E. for certain purposes at 6.4.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1060](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(e\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 266 in force for W. for certain purposes at 16.6.2006 by [S.I. 2006/1535](#), [art. 2\(c\)](#) (with [Sch.](#)); s. 266 in force for E. for certain purposes at 6.4.2007 by [S.I. 2007/1068](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#)

## 267 Devolution: Wales

In Schedule 1 to the National Assembly for Wales (Transfer of Functions) Order 1999 (S.I. 1999/672) references to the following Acts are to be treated as references to those Acts as amended by virtue of this Act—

- (a) the Housing Act 1985 (c. 68);
- (b) the Housing Act 1988 (c. 50);
- (c) the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52).

## 268 The Isles of Scilly

- (1) This Secretary of State may by order provide that, in its application to the Isles of Scilly, this Act is have effect with such modifications as are specified in the order.
- (2) Where a similar power is exercisable under another Act in relation to provisions of that Act which are amended by this Act, the power is exercisable in relation to those provisions as so amended.

## 269 Expenses

There shall be paid out of money provided by Parliament—

- (a) any expenditure incurred by the Secretary of State by virtue of this Act;
- (b) any increase attributable to this Act in the sums payable out of money so provided under any other enactment.

## 270 Short title, commencement and extent

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Housing Act 2004.
- (2) The following provisions come into force on the day on which this Act is passed—
  - (a) sections 2, 9, <sup>F176</sup>... 190, 208, 216, 233, 234, 244, 248, 250, 252, 264, 265(2) to (5), 267 to 269 and this section, and
  - (b) any other provision of this Act so far as it confers any power to make an order or regulations which is exercisable by the Secretary of State or the National Assembly for Wales.

Subsections (3) to (7) have effect subject to paragraph (b).

- (3) The following provisions come into force at the end of the period of two months beginning with the day on which this Act is passed—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) sections 180, 182 to 189, 195 to 207, 209 to 211, 217, 218, 219, 222, 224, 245 to 247, 249, 251 and 253 to 263,
  - (b) Schedule 9,
  - (c) Schedule 11, except paragraphs 15 and 16, and
  - (d) Schedule 14.
- (4) The provisions listed in subsection (5) come into force—
- (a) where they are to come into force in relation only to Wales, on such day as the National Assembly for Wales may by order appoint, and
  - (b) otherwise, on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint.
- (5) The provisions referred to in subsection (4) are—
- (a) Part 1 (other than sections 2 and 9),
  - (b) Parts 2 to 4,
  - (c) sections 179, 181, 191 to 194, 212 to 215, 220, 221, 223, 225, 226, 227, 229 to 232, 235 to 243, 265(1) and 266,
  - (d) Schedule 10,
  - (e) paragraphs 15 and 16 of Schedule 11, and
  - (f) Schedules 13, 15 and 16.
- <sup>F177</sup>(6) .....
- (7) Section 228 and Schedule 12 come into force on such day as the National Assembly for Wales may by order appoint.
- (8) Different days may be appointed for different purposes or different areas under subsection (4)<sup>F178</sup>... or (7).
- (9) The Secretary of State may by order make such provision as he considers necessary or expedient for transitory, transitional or saving purposes in connection with the coming into force of any provision of this Act.
- (10) The power conferred by subsection (9) is also exercisable by the National Assembly for Wales in relation to provision dealing with matters with respect to which functions are exercisable by the Assembly
- (11) Subject to subsections (12) and (13), this Act extends to England and Wales only.
- (12) Any amendment or repeal made by this Act has the same extent as the enactment to which it relates, except that any amendment or repeal in—  
     the Mobile Homes Act 1983 (c. 34), or  
     the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (c. 37),  
 extends to England and Wales only.
- (13) This section extends to the whole of the United Kingdom.

---

**Subordinate Legislation Made**

- P1** S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 17.2.2005 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2005/326}, art. 2;  
 S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 27.4.2005 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2005/1120}, art. 2;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 6.6.2005 and 15.6.2005 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2005/1451}, arts. 2, 3;
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 4.7.2005 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2005/1729}, art. 2 (with art. 3);
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 14.7.2005 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2005/1814}, art. 2;
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 25.11.2005 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2005/3237}, art. 2;
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 6.4.2006 and 6.7.2006 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2006/1060}, art. 2 (with art. 3, Sch.);
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 16.6.2006 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2006/1535}, art. 2 (with art. 3, Sch.);
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 2.1.2007 appointed for specified provisions and purposes by {S.I. 2006/3191}, art. 2;
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 6.4.2007 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2007/305}, art. 2;
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 6.4.2007 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2007/1068}, art. 2;
- S. 270(4)(5) power partly exercised: 13.12.2007 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2007/3232}, art. 2
- P2** S. 270(6) power partly exercised: 1.8.2007 appointed for specified provisions and purposes by {S.I. 2007/1668}, arts. 2-4;
- S. 270(6) power partly exercised: 10.9.2007 appointed for specified provisions and purposes by {S.I. 2007/2471}, arts. 2-4;
- S. 270(6) power partly exercised: 14.12.2007 appointed for specified provisions and purposes by {S.I. 2007/3308}, arts. 2-4;
- S. 270(6) power fully exercised: 6.8.2008 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2008/898}, art. 2
- P3** S. 270(7) power fully exercised: 14.7.2005 appointed for specified provisions by {S.I. 2005/1814}, art. 2

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F176** Words in s. 270(2)(a) repealed (15.1.2012) by Localism Act 2011 (c. 20), s. 240(1)(m), Sch. 25 Pt. 29
- F177** S. 270(6) repealed (15.1.2012) by Localism Act 2011 (c. 20), s. 240(1)(m), Sch. 25 Pt. 29
- F178** Word in s. 270(8) repealed (15.1.2012) by Localism Act 2011 (c. 20), s. 240(1)(m), Sch. 25 Pt. 29

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 06/04/2018. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:**

Housing Act 2004 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 03 September 2023. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.